# OASIS 🕅

# **Reference Architecture Foundation for** Service Oriented Architecture Version 1.0

# Working Draft 07

# 11 May 2012

## **Specification URIs:**

This version:

Working Draft - no public URL

## Previous working draft version:

http://www.oasis-open.org/apps/org/workgroup/soa-rm-ra/download.php/45861 (21 April)

## Previous published version:

http://docs.oasis-open.org/soa-rm/soa-ra/v1.0/soa-ra-cd-02.pdf (Authoritative) http://docs.oasis-open.org/soa-rm/soa-ra/v1.0/soa-ra-cd-02.html http://docs.oasis-open.org/soa-rm/soa-ra/v1.0/soa-ra-cd-02.doc

## **Technical Committee:**

OASIS Service Oriented Architecture Reference Model TC

## Chair:

Ken Laskey (klaskey@mitre.org), MITRE Corporation

## **Editors:**

Peter Brown (peter@peterfbrown.com), Individual Member Jeff A. Estefan (jeffrey.a.estefan@jpl.nasa.gov), Jet Propulsion Laboratory Ken Laskey (klaskey@mitre.org), MITRE Corporation Francis G. McCabe (fmccabe@gmail.com), Individual Member Danny Thornton (danny.thornton@ngc.com), Northrop Grumman

## **Related work:**

This specification is related to:

**OASIS Reference Model for Service Oriented Architecture** 

## Abstract:

This document specifies the OASIS Reference Architecture Foundation for Service Oriented Architecture (SOA-RAF). It follows from the concepts and relationships defined in the OASIS Reference Model for Service Oriented Architecture. While it remains abstract in nature, the current document describes the foundation upon which specific SOA concrete architectures can be built.

The focus of the SOA-RAF is on an approach to integrating business with the information technology needed to support it. These issues are always present but are all the more important when business integration involves crossing ownership boundaries.

The SOA-RAF follows the recommended practice of describing architecture in terms of models, views, and viewpoints, as prescribed in the ANSI/IEEE 1471-2000 (now ISO/IEC 42010-2007) Standard.

It has three main views: the Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view which focuses on the way that participants are part of a Service Oriented Architecture ecosystem; the Realization of a SOA Ecosystem view which addresses the requirements for constructing a SOA-based system in a

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Page 1 of 123

SOA ecosystem; and the *Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem* view which focuses on what is meant to own a SOA-based system.

The SOA-RAF is of value to Enterprise Architects, Business and IT Architects as well as CIOs and other senior executives involved in strategic business and IT planning.

### Status:

This Working Draft (WD) has been produced by one or more TC Members; it has not yet been voted on by the TC or approved as a Committee Draft (Committee Specification Draft or a Committee Note Draft). The OASIS document Approval Process begins officially with a TC vote to approve a WD as a Committee Draft. A TC may approve a Working Draft, revise it, and reapprove it any number of times as a Committee Draft.

## **Citation format:**

When referencing this specification the following citation format should be used:

## [SOA-RAF]

Reference Architecture Foundation for Service Oriented Architecture Version 1.0. 06 July 2011. OASIS Committee Specification Draft 03 / Public Review Draft 02. http://docs.oasis-open.org/soarm/soa-ra/v1.0/csprd02/soa-ra-v1.0-csprd02.html.

# Notices

Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

All capitalized terms in the following text have the meanings assigned to them in the OASIS Intellectual Property Rights Policy (the "OASIS IPR Policy"). The full Policy may be found at the OASIS website.

This document and translations of it may be copied and furnished to others, and derivative works that comment on or otherwise explain it or assist in its implementation may be prepared, copied, published, and distributed, in whole or in part, without restriction of any kind, provided that the above copyright notice and this section are included on all such copies and derivative works. However, this document itself may not be modified in any way, including by removing the copyright notice or references to OASIS, except as needed for the purpose of developing any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical Committee (in which case the rules applicable to copyrights, as set forth in the OASIS IPR Policy, must be followed) or as required to translate it into languages other than English.

The limited permissions granted above are perpetual and will not be revoked by OASIS or its successors or assigns.

This document and the information contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and OASIS DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTY THAT THE USE OF THE INFORMATION HEREIN WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY OWNERSHIP RIGHTS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

OASIS requests that any OASIS Party or any other party that believes it has patent claims that would necessarily be infringed by implementations of this OASIS Committee Specification or OASIS Standard, to notify OASIS TC Administrator and provide an indication of its willingness to grant patent licenses to such patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that produced this specification.

OASIS invites any party to contact the OASIS TC Administrator if it is aware of a claim of ownership of any patent claims that would necessarily be infringed by implementations of this specification by a patent holder that is not willing to provide a license to such patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that produced this specification. OASIS may include such claims on its website, but disclaims any obligation to do so.

OASIS takes no position regarding the validity or scope of any intellectual property or other rights that might be claimed to pertain to the implementation or use of the technology described in this document or the extent to which any license under such rights might or might not be available; neither does it represent that it has made any effort to identify any such rights. Information on OASIS' procedures with respect to rights in any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical Committee can be found on the OASIS website. Copies of claims of rights made available for publication and any assurances of licenses to be made available, or the result of an attempt made to obtain a general license or permission for the use of such proprietary rights by implementers or users of this OASIS Committee Specification or OASIS Standard, can be obtained from the OASIS TC Administrator. OASIS makes no representation that any information or list of intellectual property rights will at any time be complete, or that any claims in such list are, in fact, Essential Claims.

The name "OASIS" is a trademark of OASIS, the owner and developer of this specification, and should be used only to refer to the organization and its official outputs. OASIS welcomes reference to, and implementation and use of, specifications, while reserving the right to enforce its marks against misleading uses. Please see http://www.oasis-open.org/who/trademark.php for above guidance.

# **Table of Contents**

1	Introduction	-
	1.1 Context for Reference Architecture for SOA	10
	1.1.1 What is a Reference Architecture?	10
	1.1.2 What is this Reference Architecture?	10
	1.1.3 Relationship to the OASIS Reference Model for SOA	11
	1.1.4 Relationship to other Reference Architectures	11
	1.1.5 Expectations set by this Reference Architecture Foundation	
	1.2 Service Oriented Architecture – An Ecosystems Perspective	
	1.3 Viewpoints, Views and Models	
	1.3.1 ANSI/IEEE 1471-2000:ISO/IEC 42010-2007	
	1.3.2 UML Modeling Notation	
	1.4 SOA-RAF Viewpoints	
	1.4.1 Participation in a SOA Ecosystem Viewpoint	
	1.4.2 Realization of a SOA Ecosystem Viewpoint	
	1.4.3 Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem Viewpoint	
	1.5 Terminology	
	1.6 References	
	1.6.1 Normative References	
	1.6.2 Non-Normative References	
2	Architectural Goals and Principles	
	2.1 Goals and Critical Success Factors of the Reference Architecture Foundation	
	2.1.1 Goals	
	2.1.1.1 Effectiveness	
	2.1.1.2 Confidence	
	2.1.1.3 Scalability	17
	2.1.2 Critical Success Factors	18
	2.1.2.1 Action	18
	2.1.2.2 Trust	18
	2.1.2.3 Interaction	
	2.1.2.4 Control	
	2.2 Principles of this Reference Architecture Foundation	
3	Participation in a SOA Ecosystem View	
	3.1 SOA Ecosystem Model	
	3.2 Social Structure in a SOA Ecosystem Model	
	3.2.1 Stakeholders, Participants, Actors and Delegates	
	3.2.2 Social Structures and Roles	
	3.2.2.1 Authority, Rights, and Responsibilities	
	3.2.2.2 Permissions and Obligations	
	3.2.2.3 Service Roles	
	3.2.3 Needs, Requirements and Capabilities	
	3.2.4 Resource and Ownership	
	3.2.4.1 Resource	
	3.2.4.2 Ownership	
	3.2.5 Establishing Execution Context	
	a-raf-v1.0-wd07 Working Draft 07 andards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	11 May 2012 Page 4 of 123

3.2.5.1 Trust and Risk		
3.2.5.2 Policies and Co	ntracts	
3.2.5.3 Communication		34
3.2.5.4 Semantics and	Semantic Engagement	
3.3 Action in a SOA Ecosy	stem Model	
3.3.1 Services Reflecting	g Business	
3.3.2 Activity, Action, an	d Joint Action	
3.3.3 State and Shared	State	
3.4 Architectural Implicatio	ns	
3.4.1 Social structures		
3.4.2 Resource and Ow	nership	
3.4.3 Policies and Contr	acts	40
	as a Means of Mediating Action	
	5	
	ents and Capabilities	
•	Action	
-	cosystem view	
	odel	
	vice Description	
	non to General Description	
	s to Description Instances	
	Specific to Service Description	
	scription	
	ion in support of Service Interaction	
	Invoking Actions Against a Service	
	Multiple Business Functions	
	tion, Execution Context, and Service Interaction	
4.1.3 Relationship to Ot	her Description Models	
4.1.4 Architectural Implie	cations	57
4.2 Service Visibility Mode	l	
4.2.1 Visibility to Busine	SS	
4.2.2 Visibility		59
4.2.2.1 Awareness		60
÷		
4.2.2.3 Reachability		63
•	cations	64
4.3 Interacting with Service	es Model	64
	dencies	
	S	
4.3.3 Message Exchang	Je	66
	nge Patterns (MEPs)	
	nse MEP	
	n MEP	
-	rvices	
	on of Business Processes and Collaborations	
4.3.5.1 Service-Oriente	d Business Processes	70
soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product	Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	11 May 2012 Page 5 of 123

4.3	.5.2 Service-Oriented Business Collaborations	72
4.3.6	Architectural Implications of Interacting with Services	73
	cies and Contracts Model	
	Policy and Contract Representation	
	.1.1 Policy Framework	
	Policy and Contract Enforcement	
	.2.1 Enforcing Simple Policy Constraints	
	.2.2 Conflict Resolution	
	Architectural Implications	
	ership in a SOA Ecosystem View	
	ernance Model	
	Understanding Governance	
	.1.1 Terminology	
	.1.2 Relationship to Management	
	.1.3 Why is SOA Governance Important?	
	.1.4 Governance Stakeholders and Concerns	
	A Generic Model for Governance	
	.2.1 Motivating Governance	
	.2.2 Setting Up Governance	
	.2.3 Carrying Out Governance	
	.2.4 Ensuring Governance Compliance	
	.2.5 Considerations for Multiple Governance Chains	
	Governance Applied to SOA	
	.3.1 Where SOA Governance is Different	
	.3.2 What Must be Governed	
	.3.4 Considerations for SOA Governance	
	Architectural Implications of SOA Governance	
	urity Model	
	Secure Interaction Concepts	
	.1.1 Confidentiality	
	.1.2 Integrity	
	.1.3 Authentication	
	.1.4 Authorization	
	.1.5 Non-repudiation	
	.1.6 Availability	
	Where SOA Security is Different	
	Security Threats	
5.2.4	Security Responses	93
5.2	.4.1 Privacy Enforcement	93
5.2	.4.2 Integrity Protection	93
5.2	.4.3 Message Replay Protection	94
	.4.4 Auditing and Logging	
5.2	.4.5 Graduated engagement	94
5.2.5	Architectural Implications of SOA Security	94
5.3 Man	agement Model	95
5.3.1		95
	Management Means and Relationships	
soa-raf-v1.0-v		11 May 2012 Page 6 of 123

	5.3.2.1 Management Policy	100
	5.3.2.2 Network Management	100
	5.3.2.3 Security Management	100
	5.3.2.4 Usage Management	100
	5.3.3 Management and Governance	100
	5.3.4 Management and Contracts	101
	5.3.4.1 Management for Contracts and Policies	
	5.3.4.2 Contracts	101
	5.3.4.3 Policies	103
	5.3.4.4 Service Description and Management	103
	5.3.5 Management for Monitoring and Reporting	104
	5.3.6 Management for Infrastructure	104
	5.3.7 Architectural Implication of the SOA Management	105
	5.4 SOA Testing Model	105
	5.4.1 Traditional Software Testing as Basis for SOA Testing	105
	5.4.1.1 Types of Testing	106
	5.4.1.2 Range of Test Conditions	106
	5.4.1.3 Configuration Management of Test Artifacts	106
	5.4.2 Testing and the SOA Ecosystem	106
	5.4.3 Elements of SOA Testing	107
	5.4.3.1 What is to be Tested	107
	5.4.3.2 How Testing is to be Done	110
	5.4.3.3 Who Performs the Testing	110
	5.4.3.4 How Testing Results are Reported	111
	5.4.4 Testing SOA Services	112
	5.4.4.1 Progression of SOA Testing	112
	5.4.4.2 Testing Traditional Dependencies vs. Service Interactions	
	5.4.4.3 Use of Service Mocks	113
	5.4.4.4 Providers of Service Mocks	114
	5.4.4.5 Fundamental Questions for SOA Testing	
	5.4.5 Architectural Implications for SOA Testing	115
6	Conformance	116
Α.	Acknowledgements	117
В.	Index of Defined Terms	118
C.	The Unified Modeling Language, UML	119
D.	Critical Factors Analysis	120
	D.1 Goals	120
	D.2 Critical Success Factors	120
	D.3 Requirements	120
Ε.	Relationship to other SOA Open Standards	121
	E.1 Navigating the SOA Open Standards Landscape Around Architecture	
	E.2 The Service-Aware Interoperability Framework: Canonical	
	E.3 IEEE Reference Architecture	
	E.4 RM-ODP	

# Table of Figures

Figure 1 - Model elements described in the Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view	20		
Figure 2 - SOA Ecosystem Model			
Figure 3 - Social Structure Model	23		
Figure 4 – Stakeholders, Actors, Participants and Delegates	24		
Figure 5 - Social Structures, Roles and Action	26		
Figure 6 - Roles in a Service	28		
Figure 7 - Cycle of Needs, Requirements, and Fulfillment	29		
Figure 8 - Resources	30		
Figure 9 - Willingness and Trust	32		
Figure 10 – Policies, Contracts and Constraints	33		
Figure 11: An Activity, expressed informally as a graph of Actions	37		
Figure 12: Activity involving Actions across an ownership boundary	37		
Figure 13 - Model Elements Described in the Realization of a SOA Ecosystem view	42		
Figure 14 - General Description	44		
Figure 15 - Representation of a Description	45		
Figure 16 - Service Description	47		
Figure 17 - Service Interface Description	48		
Figure 18 - Service Functionality	49		
Figure 19 - Model for Policies and Contracts as related to Service Participants	50		
Figure 20 - Policies and Contracts, Metrics, and Compliance Records	51		
Figure 21 - Relationship between Action and Components of Service Description Model			
Figure 22 - Execution Context	55		
Figure 23 - Interaction Description	56		
Figure 24 - Visibility to Business	59		
Figure 25 - Mediated Awareness	61		
Figure 26 - Awareness in a SOA Ecosystem	62		
Figure 27 - Business, Description and Willingness	63		
Figure 28 - Service Reachability	63		
Figure 29 - Interaction dependencies	65		
Figure 30 - A "message" denotes either an action or an event	66		
Figure 31 - Fundamental SOA message exchange patterns (MEPs)	67		
Figure 32 - Simple model of service composition	69		
Figure 33 - Abstract example of orchestration	71		
Figure 34 - General Orchestration Pattern			
Figure 35 - Abstract example of choreography	73		
Figure 36 - Policies and Contracts	75		
Figure 37 - Model Elements Described in the Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem View	78		
Figure 38 - Motivating Governance	80		
Figure 39 - Setting Up Governance	81		
Figure 40 - Carrying Out Governance	82		
soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Working Draft 07 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	11 May 2012 Page 8 of 123		

Figure 41 - Ensuring Governance Compliance	83
Figure 42 - Relationship Among Types of Governance	85
Figure 43 - Authentication	90
Figure 44 - Authorization	91
Figure 45 - Management model in SOA ecosystem	97
Figure 46 - Management Means and Relationships in a SOA ecosystem	99
Figure 47 - Management of the service interaction	102
Figure 48 - Example UML class diagram—Resources	119
Figure 49 - SOA Reference Architecture Positioning	122

# 1 **1 Introduction**

11

12 13

14

2 Service Oriented Architecture (SOA) is an architectural paradigm that has gained significant attention

3 within the information technology (IT) and business communities. The SOA ecosystem described in this

4 document bridges the area between business and IT. It is neither wholly IT nor wholly business, but is of

5 both worlds. Neither business nor IT completely own, govern and manage this SOA ecosystem. Both sets 6 of concerns must be accommodated for the SOA ecosystem to fulfill its purposes.<sup>1</sup>

The OASIS Reference Model for SOA [SOA-RM] provides a common language for understanding the
 important features of SOA but does not address the issues involved in constructing, using or owning a
 SOA-based system. This document focuses on these aspects of SOA.

10 The intended audiences of this document and expected benefits to be realized include non-exhaustively:

- Enterprise Architects will gain a better understanding when planning and designing enterprise systems of the principles that underlie Service Oriented Architecture;
- Standards Architects and Analysts will be able to better position specific specifications in relation to each other in order to support the goals of SOA;
- Decision Makers will be better informed as to the technology and resource implications of
   commissioning and living with a SOA-based system; in particular, the implications following from
   multiple ownership domains; and
- Users/Developers will gain a better understanding of what is involved in participating in a SOAbased system.

# 20 **1.1 Context for Reference Architecture for SOA**

## 21 1.1.1 What is a Reference Architecture?

A reference architecture models the abstract architectural elements in the domain of interest independent

of the technologies, protocols, and products that are used to implement a specific solution for the domain.

24 It differs from a reference model in that a reference model describes the important concepts and 25 relationships in the domain focusing on what distinguishes the elements of the domain; a reference

26 architecture elaborates further on the model to show a more complete picture that includes showing what

is involved in realizing the modeled entities, while staying independent of any particular solution but

28 instead applies to a class of solutions.

29 It is possible to define reference architectures at many levels of detail or abstraction, and for many

30 different purposes. A reference architecture is not a concrete architecture; i.e., depending on the

31 requirements being addressed by the reference architecture, it generally will not completely specify all the

32 technologies, components and their relationships in sufficient detail to enable direct implementation.

## 33 1.1.2 What is this Reference Architecture?

34 There is a continuum of architectures, from the most abstract to the most detailed. This Reference

35 Architecture is an abstract realization of SOA, focusing on the elements and their relationships needed to

36 enable SOA-based systems to be used, realized and owned while avoiding reliance on specific concrete

- 37 technologies. This positions the work at the more abstract end of the continuum, and constitutes what is
- described in [TOGAF v9] as a "foundation architecture". It is nonetheless a *reference* architecture as it

remains solution-independent and is therefore characterized as a *Reference Architecture Foundation* 

40 because it takes a first principles approach to architectural modeling of SOA-based systems.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 10 of 123

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> By *business* we refer to any activity that people are engaged in. We do not restrict the scope of SOA ecosystems to commercial applications.

- 41 While requirements are addressed more fully in Section 2, the SOA-RAF makes key assumptions that 42 SOA-based systems involve:
- Use of resources that are distributed across ownership boundaries;
  - people and systems interacting with each other, also across ownership boundaries;
- 45 security, management and governance that are similarly distributed across ownership
   46 boundaries; and
- 47 interaction between people and systems that is primarily through the exchange of messages with
   48 reliability that is appropriate for the intended uses and purposes.
- 49 Even in apparently homogenous structures, such as within a single organization, different groups and 50 departments nonetheless often have ownership boundaries between them. This reflects organizational 51 reality as well as the real motivations and desires of the people running those organizations.
- 52 Such an environment as described above is an *ecosystem* and, specifically in the context of SOA-based
- Such an environment as described above is an *ecosystem* and, specifically in the context of SOA-based
   systems, is a **SOA ecosystem**. This concept of an ecosystem perspective of SOA is elaborated further in
   Section 1.2.
- 55 This SOA-RAF shows how Service Oriented Architecture fits into the life of users and stakeholders, how
- 56 SOA-based systems may be realized effectively, and what is involved in owning and managing them.
- 57 This serves two purposes: to ensure that SOA-based systems take account of the specific constraints of
- a SOA ecosystem, and to allow the audience to focus on the high-level issues without becoming over-
- 59 burdened with details of a particular implementation technology.

## 60 1.1.3 Relationship to the OASIS Reference Model for SOA

- 61 The OASIS Reference Model for Service Oriented Architecture identifies the key characteristics of SOA
- and defines many of the important concepts needed to understand what SOA is and what makes it
- 63 important. The Reference Architecture Foundation takes the Reference Model as its starting point, in 64 particular the vocabulary and definition of important terms and concepts.
- 65 The SOA-RAF goes further in that it shows how SOA-based systems can be realized albeit in an
- 66 abstract way. As noted above, SOA-based systems are better thought of as dynamic systems rather than
- 57 stand-alone software products. Consequently, how they are used and managed is at least as important
- 68 architecturally as how they are constructed.

## 69 1.1.4 Relationship to other Reference Architectures

- 70 Other SOA reference architectures have emerged in the industry, both from the analyst community and
- the vendor/solution provider community. Some of these reference architectures are quite abstract in
- relation to specific implementation technologies, while others are based on a solution or technology stack.
- 73 Still others use middleware technology such as an Enterprise Service Bus (ESB) as their architectural
- 74 foundation.

44

- As with the Reference Model, this Reference Architecture is primarily focused on large-scale distributed
- 76 IT systems where the participants may be legally separate entities. It is quite possible for many aspects of 77 this Reference Architecture to be realized on guite different platforms.
- 78 In addition, this Reference Architecture Foundation, as the title illustrates, is intended to provide
- 79 foundational models on which to build other reference architectures and eventual concrete architectures.
- The relationship to several other industry reference architectures for SOA and related SOA open
- 81 standards is described in Appendix E.

## 82 1.1.5 Expectations set by this Reference Architecture Foundation

- 83 This Reference Architecture Foundation is not a complete blueprint for realizing SOA-based systems. Nor
- is it a technology map identifying all the technologies needed to realize SOA-based systems. It does
- identify many of the key aspects and components that will be present in any well designed SOA-based
- 86 system. In order to actually use, construct and manage SOA-based systems, many additional design
- 87 decisions and technology choices will need to be made.

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 11 of 123

## 1.2 Service Oriented Architecture – An Ecosystems 88

#### Perspective 89

90 Many systems cannot be completely understood by a simple decomposition into parts and subsystems in particular when many autonomous parts of the system are governing interactions. We need also to 91

- understand the context within which the system functions and the participants involved in making it 92
- 93 function. This is the ecosystem. For example, a biological ecosystem is a self-sustaining and dynamic
- 94 association of plants, animals, and the physical environment in which they live. Understanding an
- ecosystem often requires a holistic perspective that considers the relationships between the elements of 95 96 the system and their environment at least as important as the individual parts of the system.
- This Reference Architecture Foundation views the SOA architectural paradigm from an ecosystems 97 perspective: whereas a system will be a capability developed to fulfill a defined set of needs, a SOA 98
- ecosystem is a space in which people, processes and machines act together to deliver those capabilities 99 100 as services.
- 101 Viewed as whole, a SOA ecosystem is a network of discrete processes and machines that, together with a community of people, creates, uses, and governs specific services as well as external suppliers of 102 103 resources required by those services.
- In a SOA ecosystem there may not be any single person or organization that is really "in control" or "in 104 105 charge" of the whole although there are identifiable stakeholders who have influence within the
- community and control over aspects of the overall system. 106
- 107 The three key principles that inform our approach to a SOA ecosystem are:
- 108 a SOA is a paradigm for exchange of value between independently acting participants;
  - participants (and stakeholders in general) have legitimate claims to ownership of resources that are made available within the SOA ecosystem; and
  - the behavior and performance of the participants are subject to rules of engagement which are captured in a series of policies and contracts.

#### **1.3 Viewpoints, Views and Models** 113

#### 1.3.1 ANSI/IEEE 1471-2000:ISO/IEC 42010-2007 114

The SOA-RAF uses and follows the IEEE "Recommended Practice for Architectural Description of 115

- Software-Intensive Systems" [ANSI/IEEE 1471] and [ISO/IEC 42010]. An architectural description 116
- conforming to this standard must include the following six (6) elements: 117
- 118 1. Architectural description identification, version, and overview information 119
  - 2. Identification of the system stakeholders and their concerns judged to be relevant to the architecture
  - 3. Specifications of each viewpoint that has been selected to organize the representation of the architecture and the rationale for those selections
  - 4. One or more architectural views
  - 5. A record of all known inconsistencies among the architectural description's required constituents
- 6. A rationale for selection of the architecture (in particular, showing how the architecture supports 125 126 the identified stakeholders' concerns).
- 127 The standard defines the following terms<sup>2</sup>:

#### 128 Architecture

109

110 111

112

120

121

122 123

124

The fundamental organization of a system embodied in its components, their relationships to 129 130 each other, and to the environment, and the principles guiding its design and evolution.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

11 May 2012 Page 12 of 123

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> See http://www.iso-architecture.org/ieee-1471/conceptual-framework.html for a diagram of the standard's **Conceptual Framework** 

## 131 Architectural Description

132 A collection of products that document the architecture.

## 133 System

134

A collection of components organized to accomplish a specific function or set of functions.

## 135 System Stakeholder

- 136A system stakeholder is an individual, team, or organization (or classes thereof) with interests in,137or concerns relative to, a system.
- 138 A stakeholder's concern should not be confused with either a need or a formal requirement. A concern,
- as understood here, is an area or topic of interest. Within that concern, system stakeholders may have
   many different requirements. In other words, something that is of interest or importance is not the same
   as something that is obligatory or of necessity [TOGAF v9].
- 142 When describing architectures, it is important to identify stakeholder concerns and associate them with
- 142 viewpoints to insure that those concerns are addressed in some manner by the models that comprise the
- 144 views on the architecture. The standard defines views and viewpoints as follows:
- 145 View

146

A representation of the whole system from the perspective of a related set of concerns.

## 147 Viewpoint

- A specification of the conventions for constructing and using a view. A pattern or template from
   which to develop individual views by establishing the purposes and audience for a view and the
   techniques for its creation and analysis.
- In other words, a view is what the stakeholders see whereas the viewpoint defines the perspective from
   which the view is taken and the methods for, and constraints upon, modeling that view.
- 153 It is important to note that viewpoints are independent of a particular system (or solutions). In this way,
- the architect can select a set of candidate viewpoints first, or create new viewpoints, and then use those
- viewpoints to construct specific views that will be used to organize the architectural description. A view,
- 156 on the other hand, is specific to a particular system. Therefore, the practice of creating an architectural 157 description involves first selecting the viewpoints and then using those viewpoints to construct specific
- 157 description involves first selecting the viewpoints and then using those viewpoints to construct specific views for a particular system or subsystem. Note that the standard requires that each view corresponds to
- exactly one viewpoint. This helps maintain consistency among architectural views which is a normative
- 160 requirement of the standard.
- 161 A view is comprised of one or more architectural models, where model is defined as:
- 162 **Model**
- 163 An abstraction or representation of some aspect of a thing (in this case, a system)
- All architectural models used in a particular view are developed using the methods established by the
- 165 architectural viewpoint associated with that view. An architectural model may participate in more than one 166 view but a view must conform to a single viewpoint.

## 167 **1.3.2 UML Modeling Notation**

- 168 An open standard modeling language is used to help visualize structural and behavioral architectural
- 169 concepts. Although many architecture description languages exist, we have adopted the Unified Modeling
- Language <sup>™</sup> 2 (UML<sup>®</sup> 2) [UML 2] as the main viewpoint modeling language. Normative UML is used
- 171 unless otherwise stated but it should be noted that it can only partially describe the concepts in each
- model it is important to read the text in order to gain a more complete understanding of the concepts
- being described in each section..
- 174 Appendix C introduces the UML notation that is used in this document.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 13 of 123

## 175 **1.4 SOA-RAF Viewpoints**

176 The SOA-RAF specifies three views (described in detail in Sections 3, 4, and 5) that conform to three

177 viewpoints: Participation in a SOA Ecosystem, Realization of a SOA Ecosystem, and Ownership in a SOA

178	Ecosystem.	There is a one-to-one correspond	ence between viewpoints an	d views	(see T	abl	e 1	).
-----	------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------	---------	--------	-----	-----	----

	Viewpoint				
Viewpoint Element	Participation in a SOA Ecosystem	Realization of a SOA Ecosystem	Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem		
Main concepts covered	Captures what is meant for people to participate in a SOA ecosystem.	Captures what is meant to realize a SOA-based system in a SOA ecosystem.	Captures what is meant to own a SOA-based system in a SOA ecosystem		
Stakeholders addressed	All participants in the SOA ecosystem	Those involved in the design, development and deployment of SOA-based systems	Those involved in governing, managing, securing, and testing SOA-based systems		
Concerns addressed	Understanding ecosystem constraints and contexts in which business can be conducted predictably and effectively.	Effective construction of SOA-based systems.	Processes to ensure governance, management, security, and testing of SOA- based systems.		
Modeling Techniques used	UML class diagrams	UML class, sequence, component, activity, communication, and composite structure diagrams	UML class and communication diagrams		

179 Table 1 - Viewpoint specifications for the OASIS Reference Architecture Foundation for SOA

## 180 **1.4.1 Participation in a SOA Ecosystem Viewpoint**

181 This viewpoint captures a SOA ecosystem as an environment for people to conduct their business. We do 182 not limit the applicability of such an ecosystem to commercial and enterprise systems. We use the term

183 business to include any transactional activity between multiple users.

184 All stakeholders in the ecosystem have concerns addressed by this viewpoint. The primary concern for

- 185 people is to ensure that they can conduct their business effectively and safely in accordance with the
- 186 SOA paradigm. The primary concern of decision makers is the relationships between people and

organizations using systems for which they, as decision makers, are responsible but which they may not
 entirely own, and for which they may not own all of the components of the system.

Given SOA's value in allowing people to access, manage and provide services across, we must explicitly
 identify those boundaries and the implications of crossing them.

## 191 **1.4.2 Realization of a SOA Ecosystem Viewpoint**

- 192 This viewpoint focuses on the infrastructure elements that are needed to support the construction of SOA-
- based systems. From this viewpoint, we are concerned with the application of well-understood
- 194 technologies available to system architects to realize the SOA vision of managing systems and services 195 that cross ownership boundaries.
- The stakeholders are essentially anyone involved in designing, constructing and deploying a SOA-basedsystem.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 14 of 123

## 198 1.4.3 Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem Viewpoint

199 This viewpoint addresses the concerns involved in owning and managing SOA-based systems within the

- SOA ecosystem. Many of these concerns are not easily addressed by automation; instead, they often involve people-oriented processes such as governance bodies.
- 202 Owning a SOA-based system implies being able to manage an evolving system. It involves playing an

203 active role in a wider ecosystem. This viewpoint is concerned with how systems are managed effectively,

204 how decisions are made and promulgated to the required end points; how to ensure that people may use

- 205 the system effectively; and how the system can be protected against, and recover from consequences of,
- 206 malicious intent.

## 207 **1.5 Terminology**

208 The keywords "MUST", "MUST NOT", "REQUIRED", "SHALL", "SHALL NOT", "SHOULD", "SHOULD

- NOT", "RECOMMENDED", "MAY", and "OPTIONAL" in this document are to be interpreted as described in **[RFC2119]**.
- 211 References are surrounded with [square brackets and are in bold text].

212 The terms "SOA-RAF", "this Reference Architecture" and "Reference Architecture Foundation" refer to

213 this document, while "the Reference Model" and "SOA-RM" refer to the OASIS Reference Model for

214 Service Oriented Architecture. [SOA-RM].

## 215 Usage of Terms

216 Certain terms are used in this document to denote concepts that are formally defined here and are

- 217 <u>intended to be</u> used with <u>the specific meanings indicated</u>. Where <u>mention</u> is <u>first</u> made <u>of</u> a formally
- 218 defined concept and the prescribed meaning is intended, we use a **bold font**. When this occurrence
- 219 appears in the text substantially in advance of the formal definition, it is also hyperlinked to the definition
- 220 in the body of the text. <u>A list of all such terms is included in the Index of Terms at Appendix B.</u> Where a
- 221 more colloquial or informal meaning is intended, these words are used without special emphasis.

## 222 **1.6 References**

## 223 1.6.1 Normative References

[ANSI/IEEE 1471]	<i>IEEE Recommended Practice for Architectural Description of Software-Intensive Systems</i> , American National Standards Institute/Institute for Electrical and Electronics Engineers, September 21, 2000.
[ISO/IEC 10746]	International Organization for Standardization and International Electrotechnical Commission, <i>Information Technology – Open Distributed Processing —</i> <i>Reference Model</i> , September 15, 1996.
[ISO/IEC 42010]	International Organization for Standardization and International Electrotechnical Commission, System and software engineering — Recommended practice for architectural description of software-intensive systems, July 15, 2007.
[RFC2119]	S. Bradner, Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels, http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt, IETF RFC 2119, March 1997.
[SOA-RM]	OASIS Standard, "Reference Model for Service Oriented Architecture 1.0, 12 October 2006. http://docs.oasis-open.org/soa-rm/v1.0/soa-rm.pdf
[UML 2]	<i>Unified Modeling Language: Superstructure</i> , Ver. 2.1.1, OMG Adopted Specification, OMG document formal/2007-02-05, Object Management Group, Needham, MA, February 5, 2007.
[WSA]	David Booth, et al., "Web Services Architecture", W3C Working Group Note, World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) (Massachusetts Institute of Technology, European Research Consortium for Informatics and Mathematics, Keio University), February, 2004. http://www.w3.org/TR/2004/NOTE-ws-arch- 20040211/
	[ISO/IEC 10746] [ISO/IEC 42010] [RFC2119] [SOA-RM] [UML 2]

11 May 2012 Page 15 of 123

# Comment [PFB1]: Issue 8

Field Code Changed

To be implemented throughout document (only section 3 done so far)

## 245 **1.6.2 Non-Normative References**

## 246 [BLOOMBERG/SCHMELZER]

247		Jason Bloomberg and Ronald Schmelzer, Service Orient or Be Doomed!, John			
248		Wiley & Sons: Hoboken, NJ, 2006.			
249	[DCMI]	Dublin Core Metadata Initiative, http://dublincore.org.			
250 251	[IEEE-829]	IEEE Standard for Software Test Documentation, Institute for Electrical and Electronics Engineers, 16 September 1998			
252 253	[ISO 11179]	ISO/IEC 11179, Information Technology Metadata registries (MDR), accessible from http://metadata-standards.org/11179/.			
254	[NEWCOMER/LOMOW]				
255		Eric Newcomer and Greg Lomow, Understanding SOA with Web Services,			
256		Addison-Wesley: Upper Saddle River, NJ, 2005.			
257 258	[TOGAF v9]	The Open Group Architecture Framework (TOGAF) Version 9 Enterprise Edition, The Open Group, Doc Number: G091, February 2009.			
259 260	[WEILL]	Harvard Business School Press, IT Governance: How Top Performers Manage IT Decision Rights for Superior Results, Peter Weill and Jeanne W. Ross, 2004			
261	[ISO/IEC 27002]	International Organization for Standardization and International Electrotechnical			
262		Commission, Information technology Security techniques - Code of practice			
263		for information security management, 2007			
264	[SOA NAV]	Heather Kreger and Jeff Estefan (Eds.), "Navigating the SOA Open Standards			
265		Landscape Around Architecture," Joint Paper, The Open Group, OASIS, and			
266		OMG, July 2009. http://www.oasis-			
267		open.org/committees/download.php/32911/wp_soa_harmonize_d1.pdf			

# 268 2 Architectural Goals and Principles

This section identifies the goals of this Reference Architecture Foundation and the architectural principlesthat underpin it.

# 271 2.1 Goals and Critical Success Factors of the Reference 272 Architecture Foundation

- 273 There are three principal goals:
  - to show how SOA-based systems can effectively bring participants with needs ('consumers') to interact with participants offering appropriate capabilities as services ('producers');
  - 2. for participants to have a clearly understood level of confidence as they interact using SOA-based systems; and
- 278 3. for SOA-based systems to be scaled for small or large systems as needed.
- 279 There are four factors critical to the achievement of these goals:
- 280 1. **Action**: an account of participants' action within the ecosystem;
- Trust: an account of how participants' internal perceptions of the reliability of others guide their
   behavior (i.e., the trust that participants may or may not have in others)
- 283 3. Interaction: an account of how participants can interact with each other; and
- Control: an account of how the management and governance of the entire SOA ecosystem can be arranged.
- 286 These goals and success factors are expanded in the following subsections.

## 287 2.1.1 Goals

274

275

276

277

## 288 2.1.1.1 Effectiveness

A primary purpose of the SOA-RAF is to show how SOA-based systems ensure that participants can use the facilities of the system to meet their needs. This does not imply that every need has a SOA solution, but for those needs that can benefit, we look at what is needed to use the SOA paradigm effectively.

292 The key factors that govern effectiveness from a participant's perspective are actions undertaken-

especially across ownership boundaries – with other participants in the ecosystem and lead to
 measurable results.

## 295 2.1.1.2 Confidence

296 SOA-based systems should enable service providers and consumers to conduct their business with the

- appropriate level of confidence in the interaction. Confidence is especially important in situations that are
   high-risk; this includes situations involving multiple ownership domains as well as situations involving the
- 299 use of sensitive resources.
- 300 Confidence has many dimensions: confidence in the successful interactions with other participants,
- 301 confidence in the assessment of trust, as well as confidence that the ecosystem is properly managed.

## 302 2.1.1.3 Scalability

- 303 The third goal of this reference architecture is scalability. In architectural terms, we determine scalability in
- 304 terms of the smooth growth of complex systems as the number and complexity of services and
- 305 interactions between participants increases. Another measure of scalability is the ease with which
- 306 interactions can cross ownership boundaries.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	
Standards Track Work Product	

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 17 of 123

#### 2.1.2 Critical Success Factors 307

- A critical success factor (CSF) is a property of the intended system, or a sub-goal that directly supports a 308
- 309 goal and there is strong belief that without it the goal is unattainable. CSFs are not necessarily
- measurable in themselves. CSFs can be associated with more than one goal. 310
- In many cases, critical success factors are often denoted by adjectives: reliability, trustworthiness, and so 311
- 312 on. In our analysis of the SOA paradigm, however, it seems more natural to identify four critical concepts
- (nouns) that characterize important aspects of SOA: 313

#### 2.1.2.1 Action 314

- 315 Participants' principal mode of participation in a SOA ecosystem is action: typically action in the interest of
- 316 achieving some desired real world effect. Understanding how action is related to SOA is thus critical to 317 the paradigm.

#### 2.1.2.2 Trust 318

- 319 The viability of a SOA ecosystem depends on participants being able to effectively measure the
- trustworthiness of the system and of participants. Trust is a private assessment of a participant's belief in 320 321 the integrity and reliability of the SOA ecosystem (see Section 3.2.5.1).
- 322 Trust can be analyzed in terms of trust in infrastructure facilities (otherwise known as reliability), trust in
- the relationships and effects that are realized by interactions with services, and trust in the integrity and 323
- 324 confidentiality of those interactions particularly with respect to external factors (otherwise known as 325 security).
- 326 Note that there is a distinction between trust in a SOA-based system and trust in the capabilities
- accessed via the SOA-based system. The former focuses on the role of SOA-based systems as a 327 328 medium for conducting business, the latter on the trustworthiness of participants in such systems. This
- architecture focuses on the former, while trying to encourage the latter. 329

#### 330 2.1.2.3 Interaction

#### In order for a SOA ecosystem to function, it is essential that the means for participants to interact with 331

- each other is available throughout the system. Interaction encompasses not only the mechanics and 332 333 semantics of **communication** but also the means for discovering and offering communication.

#### 2.1.2.4 Control 334

- 335 Given that a large-scale SOA-based system may be populated with many services, and used by large
- numbers of people; managing SOA-based systems properly is a critical factor for engendering confidence 336
- 337 in them. This involves both managing the services themselves and managing the relationships between 338 people and the SOA-based systems they are utilizing; the latter being more commonly identified with
- 339 governance.
- 340 The governance of SOA-based systems requires decision makers to be able to set policies about 341 participants, services, and their relationships. It requires an ability to ensure that policies are effectively
- 342 described and enforced. It also requires an effective means of measuring the historical and current 343 performances of services and participants.
- 344 The scope of management of SOA-based systems is constrained by the existence of multiple ownership 345 domains

#### 2.2 Principles of this Reference Architecture Foundation 346

347 The following principles serve as core tenets that guided the evolution of this reference architecture.

#### 348 **Technology Neutrality**

349 Statement: Technology neutrality refers to independence from particular technologies.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

11 May 2012 Page 18 of 123

350 351 352 353 354 355 356	Rationale:	We view technology independence as important for three main reasons: technology specific approach risks confusing issues that are technology specific with those that are integrally involved with realizing SOA-based systems; and we believe that the principles that underlie SOA-based systems have the potential to outlive any specific technologies that are used to deliver them. Finally, a great proportion of this architecture is inherently concerned with people, their relationships to services on SOA-based systems and to each other.
357 358 359 360 361 362	Implications:	The Reference Architecture Foundation must be technology neutral, meaning that we assume that technology will continue to evolve, and that over the lifetime of this architecture that multiple, potentially competing technologies will co-exist. Another immediate implication of technology independence is that greater effort is needed on the part of architects and other decision makers to construct systems based on this architecture.
363	Parsimony	
364 365	Statement:	Parsimony refers to economy of design, avoiding complexity where possible and minimizing the number of components and relationships needed.
366 367 368	Rationale:	The hallmark of good design is parsimony, or "less is better." It promotes better understandability or comprehension of a domain of discourse by avoiding gratuitous complexity, while being sufficiently rich to meet requirements.
369	Implications:	Parsimoniously designed systems tend to have fewer but better targeted features.
370	Distinction of	Concerns
371 372 373 374 375	Statement:	Distinction of Concerns refers to the ability to cleanly identify and separate out the concerns of specific stakeholders in such a way that it is possible to create architectural models that reflect those stakeholders' viewpoint. In this way, an individual stakeholder or a set of stakeholders that share common concerns only see those models that directly address their respective areas of interest.
376 377 378 379 380	Rationale:	As SOA-based systems become more mainstream and increasingly complex, it will be important for the architecture to be able to scale. Trying to maintain a single, monolithic architecture description that incorporates all models to address all possible system stakeholders and their associated concerns will not only rapidly become unmanageable with rising system complexity, but it will become unusable as well.
381 382 383 384 385 386 386 387 388 389	Implications:	This is a core tenet that drives this reference architecture to adopt the notion of architectural viewpoints and corresponding views. A viewpoint provides the formalization of the groupings of models representing one set of concerns relative to an architecture, while a view is the actual representation of a particular system. The ability to leverage an industry standard that formalizes this notion of architectural viewpoints and views helps us better ground these concepts for not only the developers of this reference architecture but also for its readers. The IEEE Recommended Practice for Architectural Description of Software-Intensive Systems <b>[ANSI/IEEE 1471-2000::ISO/IEC 42010-2007]</b> is the standard that serves as the basis for the structure and organization of this document.
390	Applicability	
391 392 393	Statement:	Applicability refers to that which is relevant. Here, an architecture is sought that is relevant to as many facets and applications of SOA-based systems as possible; even those yet unforeseen.
394 395	Rationale:	An architecture that is not relevant to its domain of discourse will not be adopted and thus likely to languish.
396 397 398 399 400	Implications:	The Reference Architecture Foundation needs to be relevant to the problem of matching needs and capabilities under disparate domains of ownership; to the concepts of "Intranet SOA" (SOA within the enterprise) as well as "Internet SOA" (SOA outside the enterprise); to the concept of "Extranet SOA" (SOA within the extended enterprise, i.e., SOA with suppliers and trading partners); and finally, to "net-centric SOA" or "Internet-ready SOA."

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 19 of 123

#### 3 Participation in a SOA Ecosystem View 401 402 No man is an island 403 No man is an island entire of itself; every man 404 is a piece of the continent, a part of the main; 405 if a clod be washed away by the sea, Europe 406 is the less, as well as if a promontory were, as 407 well as any manner of thy friends or of thine 408 own were; any man's death diminishes me, 409 because I am involved in mankind. 410 And therefore never send to know for whom 411 the bell tolls; it tolls for thee. 412 John Donne Comment [PFB2]: Do we want these quotations in a standards The Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view in the SOA-RAF focuses on the constraints and context in 413 document? 414 which people conduct business using a SOA-based system. By business we mean any shared activity 415 whose objective is to satisfy particular needs of each participant. To effectively employ the SOA paradigm, the architecture must take into account the fact and implications of different ownership 416 417 domains, and how best to organize and utilize capabilities that are distributed across those different 418 ownership domains. These are the main architectural issues that the Participation in a SOA Ecosystem 419 view tries to address. The subsections below expand on the abstract Reference Model by identifying more fully and with more 420 421 specificity what challenges need to be addressed in order to successfully apply the SOA paradigm. Although this view does not provide a specific recipe, it does identify the important things that need to be 422 423 considered and resolved within an ecosystem context. 424 The main models in this view are: 425 The SOA Ecosystem Model introduces the main relationships between the social structure and ٠ 426 the SOA-based System, as well as the key role played by the hybrid concept of participant in 427 both. Comment [PFB3]: Issue 32, part 428 the Social Structure in a SOA Ecosystem Model introduces the key elements that underlie the 429 relationships between participants and that must be considered as pre-conditions in order to 430 effectively bring needs and capabilities together across ownership boundaries; the Action in a SOA Ecosystem Model introduces the key concepts involved in service actions, 431 and shows how joint action and real-world effect are the target outcomes that motivate 432 433 interacting in a SOA ecosystem. Comment [PFB4]: 2012-03-02: «view» Need to add "SOA Ecosystem Participation in a SOA Ecosystem «viewpoint» Participation in a SOA Ecosystem Model" as new model in <<view>> «viewpointSpec» stakeholders = "All participants in the SOA ecosystem" package «conform» concerns = "Conduct business predictably and effective modeling techniques = "UML class diagrams" «model» Social Structure in a SOA Ecosystem Model «model Δ a SOA Ecosystem Model Action in 434

435 Figure 1 - Model elements described in the Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view

- 436 Furthermore, this Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view helps us understand the importance of
- 437 execution context the set of technical and business elements that allow interaction to occur in, and thus
   438 business to be conducted using, a SOA-based system.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 W Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 20 of 123 The dominant mode of communication within a SOA ecosystem is electronic, supported by IT resources
and artifacts. The stakeholders (see next section) are nonetheless people: since there is inherent
indirection involved when people and systems interact using electronic means, we lay the foundations for
how communication can be used to represent and enable action. However, it is important to understand
that these communications are usually a means to an end and not the primary interest of the participants
of the ecosystem.

## 445 3.1 SOA Ecosystem Model

The OASIS SOA Reference Model defines Service Oriented Architecture (SOA) as "a paradigm for organizing and utilizing distributed capabilities that may be **under the control of different ownership domains**" (our emphasis) and services as "the mechanism by which needs and capabilities are brought

together". The central focus of SOA is "the task or business function – getting something done."

450 Together, these ideas describe an environment in which business functions (realized in the form of

451 services) address business needs. Service implementations utilize capabilities to produce specific (real

452 world) effects that fulfill those business needs. Both those using the services, and the capabilities

themselves, may be distributed across ownership domains, with different policies and conditions of use
 in force – this environment is referred to as a SOA Ecosystem and is modeled in Figure 2.

455 The role of a service in a SOA Ecosystem is to enable effective **business solutions** in this environment.

456 Any technology system created to deliver a service in such an environment is referred to as a **SOA-**

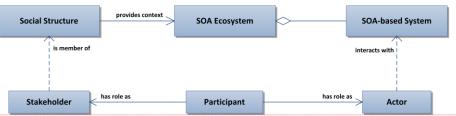
457 **based system**. SOA is thus a paradigm that guides the identification, design, implementation (i.e.,

458 organization), and utilization of such services. <u>SOA-based systems act as technology-based proxies for</u> 459 activity that would otherwise be carried out within and between social structures.

459 activity that would otherwise be carried out within and between social structures.

460 A SOA-based system is concerned with how actors interact within a system to deliver a specific result -

- the delivery of a real world effect. The SOA ecosystem is concerned with all potential stakeholders and
   the roles that they can play; how some stakeholders' needs are satisfied by other stakeholders' solutions;
- how stakeholders assess risk; how they relate to each other through policies and contracts; and how
- they communicate and establish relationships of trust in the processes leading to the delivery of a
- 465 specific result.



467 Figure 2 - SOA Ecosystem Model

## 468 SOA Ecosystem

466

472

An environment encompassing one or more **social structure(s)** and **SOA-based system(s)** that interact together to enable effective **business solutions** 

## 471 SOA-based System

- A technology system created to deliver a service within a SOA Ecosystem
- 473 Social Structures are defined and described in more detail in the next model, shown in Figure 3.
- 474 **Stakeholders**, Actors, and Participants are formally defined in Section 3.2.1.
- 475 Participants (as stakeholders and as actors), SOA-based systems, and the environment (or context)
- 476 within which they all operate, taken together forms the SOA ecosystem. Participants (or their delegates)
- 477 interact with a SOA-based system in the role of actors and are also members of a social structure in

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 21 of 123 Comment [PFB5]: Issue 32, part

Comment [PFB6]: Issue 32, part

478 the role of stakeholders. Here we explicitly note that stakeholders and, thus, participants are people<sup>3</sup>

479 because machines alone cannot truly have a stake in the outcomes of a social structure. Delegates may

480 be human and nonhuman but are not directly stakeholders. Stakeholders, both Participants and Non-

481 participants, may potentially benefit from the services delivered by the SOA-based system. Again, this is 482 discussed more fully in Section 3.2.1.

483 The SOA ecosystem may reflect the SOA-based activities within a particular enterprise or of a wider

484 network of one or more enterprises and individuals; these are modeled in and discussed with respect to

485 Figure 3. Although a SOA-based system is essentially an IT concern, it is nonetheless a system

- 486 engineered deliberately to be able to function in a SOA ecosystem. In this context, a service is the
   487 mechanism that brings a SOA-based system capability together with stakeholder needs in the wider
- 488 ecosystem.

Several interdependent concerns are important in our view of a SOA ecosystem. The ecosystem includes
 stakeholders who are participants in the development, deployment and governance and use of a system

and its services; or who may not participate in certain activities but are nonetheless are affected by the

492 system. Actors - whether stakeholder participants or delegates who act only on behalf of participants

493 (without themselves having any stake in the actions that they have been tasked to perform) – are

494 engaged in **actions** which have an impact on the real world and whose meaning and intent are

495 determined by implied or agreed-to semantics. This is discussed further in relation to the model in Figure

496 4 and elaborated more fully in Section 3.3.

# 497 **3.2 Social Structure in a SOA Ecosystem Model**

498 499 500	The Social Structure Model explains the relationships between stakeholders and the social context in which they operate, within and between distinct boundaries. It is also the foundation for understanding security, governance and management in the SOA ecosystem.
501 502 503	<u>A</u> ctions undertaken by people (whether natural or legal persons) are performed in a <i>social context</i> that defines the relationships between <u>them</u> . That context is <u>provided by</u> <b>social structures</b> <u>existing in society</u> and the roles played by each person <del>is as <u>a stakeholders</u> in those structures</del> .
504 505 506 507 508 509	Whether informal peer groups, associations, enterprises, corporations, government agencies, or entire nations, these structures interact with each other in the world, using treaties, contracts, market rules, handshakes, negotiations and – when necessary – have recourse to arbitration and legislation. They interact because there is a mutual benefit in doing so: one has something that the other can provide. They interact across defined or implicit <b>ownership boundaries</b> that define the limits of one structure (and the limits of its <b>authority</b> , responsibilities, capabilities, etc.) and the beginning of another.
510 511 512 513 514 515 516	Social structures, together with their <b>constitution</b> , their stakeholders, their mission and goals, need therefore to be understood when examining the role that technology plays. Technology systems play an increasing role in carrying out many of the functions performed by such structures and therefore model real-world procedures. The technology systems serve as proxies in digital space for these real-world structures and procedures. The SOA paradigm is particularly concerned with designing, configuring and managing such systems across ownership boundaries precisely because this mirrors the real-world interactions between discrete structures and across their ownership boundaries.
517 518 519 520 521	A stakeholder in a social structure will be involved in many "actions" that do not involve a SOA-based system. Although such actions and the roles relating to them are outside the scope of this Reference Architecture Foundation, they may nonetheless result in constraining or otherwise impacting a given SOA ecosystem – for example, a new item of legislation that regulates service interactions. The terms 'actor' and 'action' used throughout the document refer thus only to SOA-based systems.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> 'People' and 'person' must be understood as both humans and 'legal persons', such as companies, who have **rights** and **responsibilities** similar to 'natural persons' (humans)

	Mission Goal	
	describes	
	Social Structure Constitution	
	is member of Is bound by	
522	Stakeholder	
523	Figure 3 - Social Structure Model	
524	Social Structure	
525 526	A nexus of relationships amongst people brought together for a specific purpose <u>, the structure's</u> mission.	Comment [PFB7]: Issue 287, part
527 528 529 530	The social structure is established with an implied or explicitly defined <u>mission</u> , usually reflected in the goals laid down in the social structure's constitution or other 'charter'. <u>Although goals are often expressed</u> in terms of general ambitions for the social structure's work or of desired end states, objectives are expressed more formally in terms of specific, measurable, and achievable action required to realize those	
531	states. Action in the context of a social structure is discussed in Section 3.3.	Comment [PFB8]: Issues 28, 53
532 533 534 535 536 537	A social structure may involve any number of persons <u>as stakeholders</u> and a large number of different relationships may exist among them. The organizing principle for these relationships is the social structure's <u>mission</u> . <u>Any</u> given person can be a <u>stakeholder in</u> multiple social structures and <u>a</u> social structure itself can be a stakeholder in its own right as part of a larger one or in another social structure <u>entirely</u> . <u>These multiple roles can result</u> in disagreements, <u>particularly</u> when the <u>mission or goals of different</u> social structures do not align.	
538 539 540 541 542	A social structure can take different forms. <u>An enterprise is a common kind of social structure with its</u> <u>distinct legal personality</u> ; an online <u>community group might</u> represent a social structure of peers that is very loose, <u>albeit with a shared mission</u> . A market represents a social structure of buyers and sellers. <u>Legislation in different geo-political areas (from local and regional to national or global) provides a</u> <u>framework in which social structures can operate.</u>	
543	A social structure will further its goals in one of two ways:	
544 545	<ul> <li>by acting alone, using its own resources;</li> <li>interacting with other structures and using their resources.</li> </ul>	
546 547 548 549 550	Many interacting with other structures and using their resources. Many interactions take place within social structures. <u>Some interactions may or may not cross ownership</u> <u>boundaries</u> depending on the scale and internal organization of the structure (an enterprise, for example, can itself be composed of sub-enterprises). <u>Our focus is on interactions between social structures</u> , <u>particularly as they determine the way that technology systems need to interact. Systems that are</u> <u>designed to do this are SOA-based systems</u> .	
551 552 553 554	The nature and extent of the interactions that take place will reflect, often implicitly, degrees of trust between people and the very specific circumstances of each person at the time, and over the course, of their interactions. It is in the nature of a SOA ecosystem that these relationships are rendered more explicit and are formalized as a central part of what the [SOA-RM] refers to as Execution Context.	Comment [PFB9]: Issue 44, part
555 556 557 558 559	The validity of the interactions between social structures is not always clear and is often determined ultimately by relevant legislation. For example, when a customer buys a book over the Internet, the validity of the transaction <u>may be determined by the place of incorporation of</u> the book vendor, <u>the</u> <u>residence of the buyer</u> , or a combination of both. Such legal jurisdiction qualification is typically buried in the fine print of the service description.	

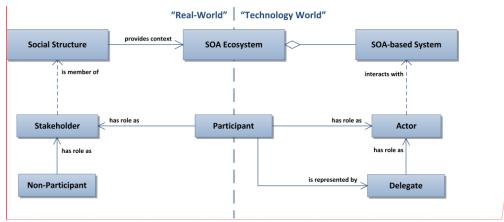
soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 23 of 123

### 560 Constitution

- 561A set of rules, written or unwritten, that formalize the mission, goals, scope, and functioning of a562social structure.
- 563 Every social structure functions according to rules by which people interact with each other within the 564 structure. In some cases, this is based on an explicit agreement; in other cases, participants behave as 565 though they agree to the constitution without a formal agreement. In still other cases, participants abide
- 566 by the rules with some degree of reluctance. In all cases, the constitution may change over time; in those
- 567 cases of implicit agreement, the change can occur quickly. Section 5.1 contains a detailed discussion of
- 568 governance and SOA.

## 569 3.2.1 Stakeholders, Participants, Actors and Delegates

- 570 A social structure represents the interests of a collection of people who have **rights** and **responsibilities**
- 571 within the structure. People have a "stake" in such a social structure, and when that social structure is
- 572 part of a SOA Ecosystem, the people continue to interact through their roles as stakeholders. In addition,
- 573 people either directly or through their delegates interact with SOA-based (technology) systems. Here,
- 574 the people interact through their roles as actors interacting with specific system-level activity.
- A person who participates in a social structure as a stakeholder *and* interacts with a SOA-based system
- as an actor <u>is defined</u> as an ecosystem **Participant**. The concept of participant is particularly important as
   it reflects a hybrid role of a Stakeholder concerned with expressing needs and seeing those needs fulfilled
- and an Actor directly involved with system-level activity that result in necessary effects.
- 579 The hybrid role of Participant provides a bridge between social structures within the wider (real-world) 580 ecosystem – in particular the world of the stakeholder – and the more specific (usually technology-
- 581 focused) system the world of the actor.
- 582The concept of the ecosystem therefore embraces all aspects of the "real world", human-centered, social<br/>structures that are concerned with business interactions together with the technology-centered SOA-<br/>based system that deliver services:584based system that deliver services:
- 585 586



# **Comment [PFB11]:** Issue 32, part; Issue 280, part;

**Comment [KJL10]:** Issue 31 for edits in this paragraph

## 587

588 Figure 4 – Stakeholders, Actors, Participants and Delegates

## 589 Stakeholder

590 A person with an interest (a 'stake') in a social structure.

591 Not all stakeholders necessarily participate in all activities in the SOA ecosystem; indeed, the interest of 592 non-participant stakeholders may be to realize the benefits of a well-functioning ecosystem and not suffer

unwanted consequences. Non-participant stakeholders cannot all or always be identified in advance but

594 due account is often taken of such stakeholder types, including potential customers, beneficiaries, and

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Working Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 24 of 123

595 596	other affected third parties. A stakeholder may be a participant with respect to some activities and a non- participant with respect to others.
597	Actor
598 599	A role played either by a <b>Participant</b> or its <b>Delegate</b> and that interacts with a SOA-based system.
600	Participant
601 602 603 604	A person who plays a role <i>both</i> in the <b>SOA ecosystem</b> as a <b>stakeholder</b> <i>and</i> with the <b>SOA</b> - <u>based system</u> as an <u>actor</u> either <u>directly</u> , in the case of a human participant; or <u>indirectly</u> , via a <u>delegate</u> .
605 606 607	Not all participants are necessarily benign to the social structure: such "negative stakeholders" might deliberately seek a negative impact on the ecosystem (such as hackers or criminals) and social structures will work to ensure that they are not able to operate as welcome participants.
608	Non-Participant
609 610	A person who plays no role as a <b>participant</b> in a <b>social structure</b> 's activities but nonetheless has an interest in, or is affected by, such activities.
611	Delegate
612 613	A role played by a human or an automated or semi-automated agent and acting on behalf of a <b>participant</b> but not directly sharing the participant's stake in the outcome.
614 615 616 617	Many actors interact with a SOA-based system, including software agents that permit people to offer, and interact with, services; delegates that represent the interests of other participants; or security agents charged with managing the security of the ecosystem. Note that automated agents are <i>always</i> delegates, in that they act on behalf of a participant.
618 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626	In the different models of the SOA-RAF, the term actor is used when action is being considered at the level of the SOA-based system and when it is not relevant who is carrying out the action. However, if the actor is acting explicitly <i>on behalf of</i> a participant, then we use the term delegate. This underlines the importance of delegation in SOA-based systems, whether the delegation is of work procedures carried out by human agents who have no stake in the actions with which they are tasked but act on behalf of a participant who does; or whether the delegation is performed by technology (automation). On the other hand, if it is important to emphasize that when the actor is also a stakeholder in the ecosystem, then we use the term participant. This also underlines the pivotal role played by a participant, in a unique position between the social structure and the SOA-based system, in the broader ecosystem.
627 628 629	The difference between a participant and a delegate is that a delegate acts on behalf of a participant and must have the authority to do so. Because of this, every social structure needs to clearly define the roles assigned to actors (whether participants or delegates) in carrying out activity within its domain.
630	3.2.2 Social Structures and Roles
631   632   633   634   635   636   637   638	Social structures are abstractions: <u>they</u> cannot directly perform actions with SOA-based systems – only <u>actors can, whether they be participants acting under their own volition or delegates (human or not)</u> <u>simply</u> following the instructions of <u>participants. An actor advances the objectives of a social structure</u> <u>through its interaction with SOA-based systems, influencing actions that deliver results</u> . The specifics of the interaction depend on the roles defined by the social structure that the actor may assume or have conferred and the nature of the relationships between the <u>stakeholders</u> concerned. These relationships can introduce constraints on an actor when engaged in an action. These points are illustrated in Figure 5. A role is not immutable and is often time-bound. An actor can have one or more roles concurrently and
639	may change them over time and in different contexts, even over the course of a particular interaction.
640	3.2.2.1 Authority, Rights, and Responsibilities
641 642	One participant with appropriate authority in the social structure may formally designate a role for a delegate or another participant, with associated rights and responsibilities, and that authority may even

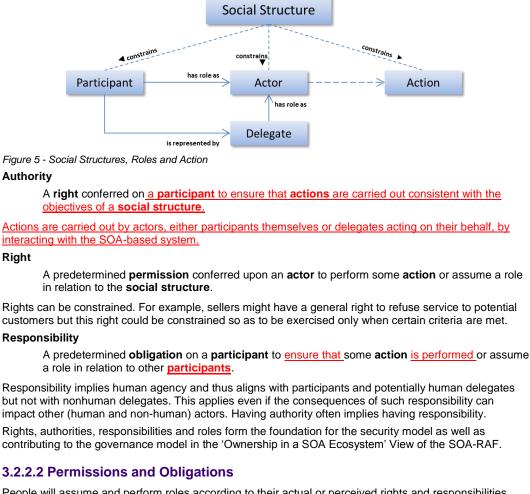
delegate or another participant, with associated rights and responsibilities, and that authority may even

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Page 25 of 123

- qualify a period during which the designated role may be valid. In addition, while many roles are clearly
- identified, with appropriate names and definitions of responsibilities, it is also possible to separately
- bestow rights, bestow or assume responsibilities and so on, often in a temporary fashion. For example,
- when a company president delegates certain responsibilities on another person, this does not imply that
- the other person has become company president. Likewise, a company president may bestow on someone else her role during a period of time that she is on vacation or otherwise unreachable with the
- understanding that she will re-assume the role when she returns from vacation.
- Conversely, someone who exhibits gualification and skill may assume a role without any formal
- designation. For example, an office administrator who has demonstrated facility with personal computers may be known as (and thus assumed to role of) the 'go to' person for people who need help with their
- computers.

657

The social structure is responsible for establishing the authority by which actors carry out actions in line with defined constraints:



## 

- People will assume and perform roles according to their actual or perceived rights and responsibilities,
- with or without explicit authority. In the context of a SOA ecosystem, human abilities and skills are
- relevant as they equip individuals with knowledge, information and tools that may be necessary to have
- meaningful and productive interactions with a view to achieving a desired outcome. For example, a person who needs a particular book, and has both the right and responsibility of purchasing the book from

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Page 26 of 123

- 682 a given bookseller, will not have that need met from the online delegate of that bookstore if he does not
- 683 know how to use a web browser. Equally, just because someone does have the requisite knowledge or 684 skills does not entitle them *per se* to interact with a specific system.
- 685 Assuming or accepting rights and responsibilities depend on two important types of constraints that are
- 686 relevant to a SOA ecosystem: Permission and Obligation.

## 687 Permission

- 688A constraint that identifies actions that an actor is (or is not) allowed to perform and/or the689states in which the actor is (or is not) permitted.
- 690 Note that permissions are distinct from ability, which refers to whether an actor has the capacity to
- 691 perform the action. Permission does not always involve acting on behalf of anyone, nor does it imply or
- 692 require the capacity to perform the action.

## 693 Obligation

- 694A constraint that prescribes the actions that an actor must (or must not) perform and/or the695states the actor must (or must not) attain or maintain.
- 696 An example of obligations is the case where the service **consumer** and **provider** (see below) have 697 entered into an agreement to provide and consume a service such that the consumer is obligated to pay
- 698 for the service and the provider is obligated to provide the service based on the terms of the contract.
- 699 An obligation can also be a requirement to maintain a given state. This may range from a requirement to
- 700 maintain a minimum balance on an account to a requirement that a service provider 'remember' that a 701 particular service consumer is logged in.
- 701 particular service consumer is logged in.
- 702 Both permissions and obligations can be identified ahead of time, but only permissions can be validated a
- 703 priori: before the intended action or before entering the constrained state. Obligations can only be 704 validated a posteriori through some form of auditing or verification process.

## 705 3.2.2.3 Service Roles

- As in roles generally, a participant can play one or more in the SOA ecosystem, depending on the
- 707 context. A participant may be playing a role of a service provider in one relationship while simultaneously
- playing the role of a consumer in another. Roles inherent to the SOA paradigm include **Consumer**,
- 709 **Provider**, **Owner**, and **Mediator**.

## 710 Provider

711

713

A role assumed by a **participant** who is offering a service.

## 712 Consumer

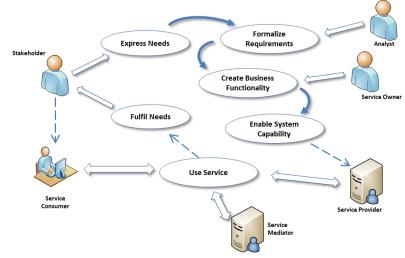
A role assumed by a participant who is interacting with a service in order to fulfill a need.

## 714 Mediator

715 A role assumed by a **participant** to facilitate interaction and connectivity in the offering and use of 716 services.

## 717 Owner

718 A role assumed by a **participant** who is claiming and exercising **ownership** over a service.



719

720 Figure 6 - Roles in a Service

721 Service consumers typically initiate interactions, but this is not necessarily true in all situations.

722 Additionally, several stakeholders may be involved in a service interaction supporting a given consumer.

723 The roles of service provider and service consumer are often seen as symmetrical, which is also not

724 entirely correct. A stakeholder tends to express a Need in non-formal terms: "I want to buy that book".

725 The type of need that a service is intended to fulfill has to be formalized and encapsulated by designers

and developers as a **Requirement**. This Requirement should then be reflected in the target service, as a 726

727 Capability that, when accessed via a service, delivers a Real World Effect to an arbitrary consumer:

"The chosen book is ordered for the consumer." It thus fulfills the need that has been defined for an 728 729

archetypal consumer.

730 Specific and particular customers may not experience a need exactly as captured by the service: "I don't want to pay that much for the book", "I wanted an eBook version", etc. There can therefore be a process 731

732 of implicit and explicit negotiation between the consumer and the service, aimed at finding a 'best fit'

733 between the consumer's specific need and the capabilities of the service that are available and consistent

with the service provider's offering. This process may continue up until the point that the consumer is able 734 to accept what is on offer as being the best fit and finally 'invokes' the service. 'Execution context' has 735

736 thus been established. Conditions and agreements that contribute to the execution context are discussed

737 throughout this Reference Architecture.

738 Service mediation by a participant can take many forms and may invoke and use other services in order

739 to fulfill such mediation. For example, it might use a service registry in order to identify possible service 740 partners; or, in our book-buying example, it might provide a price comparison service, suggest alternative

suppliers, different language editions or delivery options. 741

#### 3.2.3 Needs, Requirements and Capabilities 742

743 Participants in a SOA ecosystem often need other participants to do something, leveraging a capability 744 that they do not themselves possess. For example, a customer requiring a book may call upon a service provider to deliver the book. Likewise, the service provider needs the customer to pay for it. 745

746 There is a reason that participants are engaged: they have different needs and have or apply different

747 capabilities for satisfying them. These are core to the concept of a service. The SOA-RM defines a

748 service as "the mechanism by which needs and capabilities are brought together". This idea of services

being a mechanism "between" needs and capabilities was introduced in order to emphasize capability as 749

750 the notional or existing business functionality that would address a well-defined need. Service is therefore

751 the implementation of such business functionality such that it is accessible through a well-defined

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

11 May 2012 Page 28 of 123

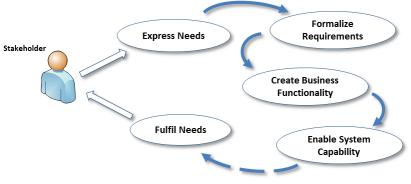
Comment [PFB12]: Moved from Action Model section

752 interface. A capability that is isolated (i.e., it is inaccessible to potential consumers) is emphatically not a

753 service.

#### 754 **Business functionality**

- 755 A defined set of business-aligned tasks that provide recognizable business value to consumer 756 stakeholders and possibly others in the SOA ecosystem.
- 757 The idea of a service in a SOA ecosystem combines business functionality with implementation, including
- the artifacts needed and made available as IT resources. From the perspective of software developers, a 758
- SOA service enables the use of capabilities in an IT context. For the consumer, the service (combining 759
- 760 business functionality and implementation) generates intended real world effects. The consumer is not
- concerned with the underlying artifacts which make that delivery possible. 761



## 762

#### 763 Figure 7 - Cycle of Needs, Requirements, and Fulfillment

764 In a SOA context, the stakeholder expresses a need (for example, the consumer who states that "I want to buy a book") and looks to an appropriate service to fulfill that need and assesses issues such as the 765 766 trustworthiness, intent and willingness of a particular provider. This ecosystem communication continues 767 up to the point when the stakeholder is ready to act. The stakeholder will then interact with a provider by 768 invoking a service (for example, by ordering the book using an online bookseller) and engaging in 769 relevant actions with the system (at this point, in a role as an actor, interacting with the system through a 770 browser or mobile device, validating the purchase, submitting billing and delivery details) with a view to

#### achieving the desired real world effect (having the book delivered). 771

#### 772 Need

773

775

A general statement expressed by a stakeholder of something deemed necessary.

774 A need may be formalized as one or more requirements that must be fulfilled in order to achieve a stated

#### goal. 776 Requirement

- 777 A formal statement of a desired result (a real world effect) that, if achieved, will satisfy a need.
- 778 This requirement can then be used to create a capability that in turn can be brought to bear to satisfy that need. Both the requirement and the capability to fulfill it are expressed in terms of desired real world 779
- 780 effect.

#### 781 Capability 782

An ability to deliver a real world effect.

783 The Reference Model makes a distinction between a capability (as a potential to deliver the real world 784 effect) and the ability of bringing that capability to bear (via a realized service) as the realization of the 785 real world effect.

#### 786 Real World Effect

A measurable change to the shared state of pertinent entities, relevant to and experienced by 787 specific stakeholders of an ecosystem. 788

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

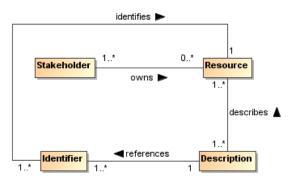
11 May 2012 Page 29 of 123 Comment [PFB13]: Issues 56 and 57 - text moved from Action section

789	This implies measurable change in the overall state of the SOA ecosystem. In practice, however, it is
790	specific state changes of certain entities that are relevant to particular participants that constitute the real
791	world effect as experienced by those participants.
792	Objectives refer to real world effects that participants believe are achievable by a specific action or set of
793	actions that deliver appropriate changes in shared state, as distinct from a more generally stated 'goal'.
794	For example, someone may wish to have enough light to read a book. In order to satisfy that goal, the
795	reader walks over to flip a light switch. The objective is to change the state of the light bulb, by turning on
796	the lamp, whereas the goal is to be able to read. The real world effect is more light being available to
797	enable the person to read.
798	While an effect is any measurable change resulting from an action, a SOA ecosystem is concerned more
799	specifically with real world effects.
I	

## 800 3.2.4 Resource and Ownership

## 801 3.2.4.1 Resource

- 802 A resource is generally understood as an asset: it has value to someone. Key to this concept in a SOA
- 803 ecosystem is that a resource needs to be identifiable.



804

807

815

- 805 Figure 8 Resources
- 806 Resource
  - An identifiable entity that has value to a stakeholder.
- A resource may be identifiable by different methods but within a SOA ecosystem a resource must have at least one well-formed identifier that may be unambiguously resolved to the intended resource.
- 810 Codified (but not *implied*) contracts, policies, obligations, and permissions are all examples of resources,
- 811 as are capabilities, services, service descriptions, and SOA-based systems. An *implied* policy, contract,
- 812 obligation or permission would not be a resource, even though it may have value to a stakeholder,
- 813 because it is not an identifiable entity.

### 814 Identifier

A sequence of characters that unambiguously indicates a particular resource.

816	Identifiers are assigned by social structures according to context, policies and procedures considered
817	sufficient for that structure's purposes.
818	For example, a group of otherwise unrelated humans are all, in a given context, employees of a partic

For example, a group of otherwise unrelated humans are all, in a given context, employees of a particular
company and managed there as human resources. That company's policy is to assign each employee a
unique identifier number and has processes in place to do this, including verifying documentary evidence
(such as a birth certificate or ID). Each set of policies and procedures will reflect the needs of the social
structure for its particular context. Resources are typically used or managed by different stakeholder
groups, each of which may need to identify those resources in some particular way. As such, a given
resource may have multiple identifiers, each valid for a different context. In a SOA ecosystem, it is good

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 30 of 123 Comment [KJL14]: Moved to complete comments 56 & 57

practice to use globally unique identifiers (for example, Internationalized Resource Identifiers, or IRIs)
 irrespective of any other resource identifier that might be in use for a particular context.
 The ability to identify a resource is important in interactions to determine such things as rights and
 authorizations, to understand what functions are being performed and what the results mean, and to
 ensure repeatability or characterize differences with future interactions. Many interactions within a SOA

830 ecosystem take place across ownership boundaries. Identifiers provide the means for all resources

important to a given SOA-based system to be *unambiguously* identifiable at any moment and in any
 interaction.

## 833 **3.2.4.2 Ownership**

834 Ownership is defined as a relationship between a stakeholder and a resource, where some stakeholder 835 (in a role as owner) has certain claims with respect to the resource.

Typically, the ownership relationship is one of control: the owner of a resource can control some aspect of the resource.

## 838 Ownership

A set of claims, expressed as rights and responsibilities that a stakeholder has in relation to a
 resource; it may include the right to transfer that ownership, or some subset of rights and
 responsibilities, to another entity.

842 To own a resource implies taking responsibility for creating, maintaining and, if it is to be available to

others, provisioning the resource. More than one stakeholder may own different rights or responsibilities
 associated with a given service, such as one stakeholder having the responsibility to deploy a capability

845 as a service, another owning the rights to the profits that result from charging consumers for using the

- service, and yet another owning the right to use the service. There may also be joint ownership of a resource, where the rights and responsibilities are shared.
- A stakeholder who owns a resource may delegate some or all of these rights and responsibilities to
   others, but typically retains the responsibility to see that the delegated rights and responsibilities are
   exercised as intended

A crucial property that distinguishes ownership from a more limited right to use is the right to transfer rights and responsibilities totally and irrevocably to another. When participants use but do not own a

resource, they may not be allowed to transfer the right to use the resource to a third participant. The

owner of the resource maintains the rights and responsibilities of being able to authorize others to use the source.

856 Ownership is defined in relation to the social structure relative to which the given rights and

- responsibilities are exercised. For example, there may be constraints on how ownership may be
- transferred, such as a government may not permit a corporation to transfer assets to a subsidiary in a
- 859 different jurisdiction.

## 860 Ownership Boundary

The extent of ownership asserted by a stakeholder or a social structure over a set of
 resources and for which rights and responsibilities are claimed and (usually) recognized by
 other stakeholders.

## 864 3.2.5 Establishing Execution Context

865 In a SOA ecosystem, providers and consumers of services may be, or may be acting on behalf of,

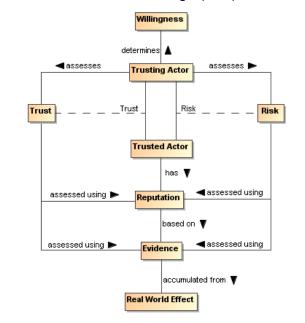
different owners, and thus the interaction between the provider and the consumer of a given service may
 necessarily cross an ownership boundary. It is important to identify these ownership boundaries in a SOA
 ecosystem and successfully crossing them in a key aspect of establishing execution context. This is turn
 requires that the elements identified in the following sections be addressed.

**Comment [PFB15]:** Issue 245 Former sections 3.2.5 ("Trust and Risk") thru 3.2.8 ("Semantics and Semantic Engagement") are now sub-sections under this heading

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 31 of 123

## 870 3.2.5.1 Trust and Risk

871 For an interaction to occur each actor must be able and **willing** to participate.



872

873 Figure 9 - Willingness and Trust

## 874 Willingness

- The internal commitment of a human actor (or of an automated non-human agent acting on a participant's behalf) to carry out its part of an interaction.
- 877 Willingness to interact is not the same as a willingness to perform requested actions, however. For 878 example, a service provider that rejects all attempts to perform a particular action may still be fully willing 879 and engaged in interacting with the consumer. Important considerations in establishing willingness are
- 880 both trust and risk.

881 **Trust** 

882The private assessment or internal perception of one **actor** that another actor will perform883**actions** in accordance with an assertion regarding a desired **real world effect**.

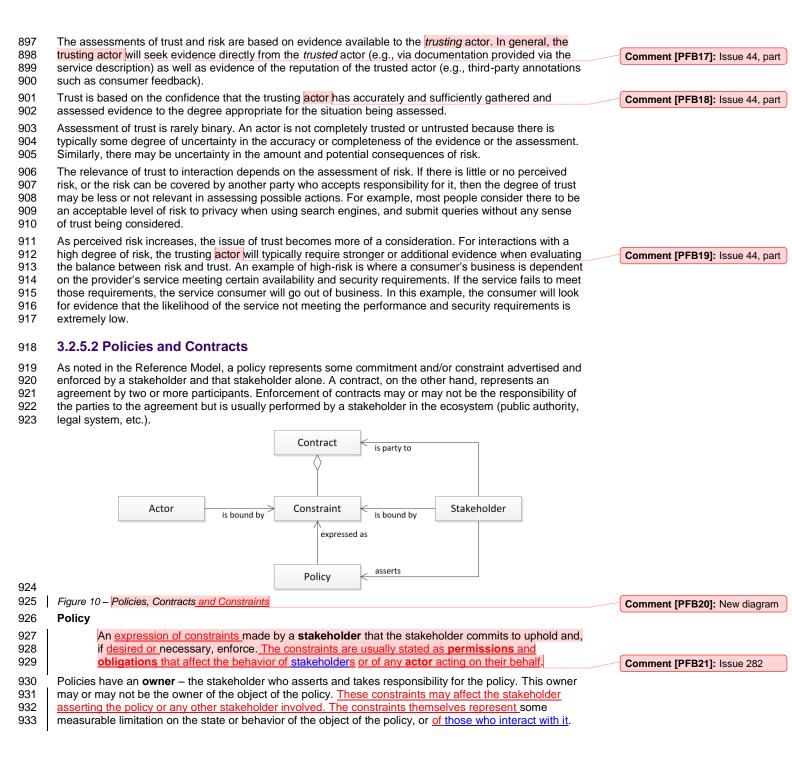
884 Risk

885 The private assessment or internal perception of the likelihood that certain undesirable **real world** 886 **effects** will result from **actions** taken and the consequences or implications of such.

887 Trust is involved in all interactions and each actor will play a role as either (or alternately) a "trusting" actor

- and a "trusted" actor. These roles are needed in order that all actors can trust all others in any given
   interaction, at least to the extent required for continuance of the interaction. The degree and nature of that
- trust is likely to be different for each actor, most especially when those actors are in different ownershipboundaries.
- 892 An actor perceiving risk may take actions to mitigate that risk. At one extreme this will result in a refusal to 893 interact. Alternately, it may involve adding protection – for example by using encrypted communication
- and/or anonymization to reduce the perception of risk. Often, standard procedures are put in place to
- 895 increase trust and to mitigate risk.
- 896

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 32 of 123 Comment [PFB16]: Issue 44, part



soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 33 of 123

#### 934 Contract

A service provider's policy may become a service provider consumer contract when a service consumer's policy and a provider's policy are mutually exclusive, then some form of negotiation (involving human interaction are naccut. Note, this also applies if the consumer is negotiation (involving human error consumer's policy are mutually exclusive, then some form of negotiation (involving human error consumer's policy are mutually exclusive, then some form of negotiation (involving human error consumer's policy are mutually exclusive, then some form of negotiation (involving human error consumer's policy are mutually exclusive, then some form of negotiation (involving human error consumer's policy and a provider's policy are mutually exclusive, then a service is not necessarily policy the effect on the construction particle is to exe constraints respected and enforced. Statewolders are increased in Section 5.4. <b>D AC Communication A constructions on the exclassing of information between a service in informed recipient, who mutual understanding between them.       <b>Comment (PFB23)</b>; Issue 48         <b>A communication</b>       A constructions and a least one informed statework and the message and at least one informed recipient, who mutual understanding between them.       <b>Comment (PFB23)</b>; Issue 48         <b>A communication</b> may involve any number of recipients. In some situations, the sender ran on to be avane of the recipient. There was a constructions, a prevention is not defective.       <b>Comment (PFB23)</b>; Issue 43         <b>M communication</b> may involve any number of recipient, there is no communication. A given communication may involve any number of recipient. There is no communication. A given communication is a sender and recipient, there is no communication. A given communication is a sender and recipient, there is no</b>	935 936 937		de by two or more <b>participants</b> (the contracting pa ns) together with a set of constraints that govern th ditions.		
<ul> <li>responsible for ensuring that any constraints in the policy or contract are enforced, although the actual delegated to a different mechanism. A contract does not necessarily oblige the contractorecurs (for example, when a service) but it does constrain how they act if and when the contracting parties to act (for example, when a service) is invoked and used).</li> <li>The realization of policies and contracts is discussed in Section 4.4 and contracts in the context of management are discussed in Section 5.3.4.</li> <li><b>3.2.5.3 Communication</b></li> <li><b>Communication</b></li> <li>A process involving the exchance of information between a sender and one or more recipients and that ideality culminates in mutual understanding between them.</li> <li>A converse a message, a sender of the message and at least one intended recipient, when mutual understanding between the sender may not be aware of the recipient. However, without both a sender and a recipients, is none situations, the sender may not be aware of the recipient. However, without both a sender and a recipient, there is no communication. Agiven a tensage in a given context.</li> <li>We can characterize the necessary modes of interpretation in terms of semantic engagement: the proper understanding of a message and a different weeds and engine in a given context.</li> <li>We can characterize the necessary modes of the purpose.</li> <li>In a SOA ecosystem, igneders and recipient and engipient form and involve terms not found in everyday human communication.</li> <li>Stared understanding is vital to a trasted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action be a service and the explained set and ecole propose.</li> <li>In a SOA ecosystem, igneders and recipient set a particular form and involve terms not found in everyday human communication.</li> <li>Stared understanding is vital to a trasted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action be a service of the ressage in a given corte</li></ul>	939 940 941	agrees to the provider's po and a provider's policy are interactions) or mediation	blicy. That agreement may be formal, or may be informated in the some form of negotiation must resolve the mutual exclusion before the service must resolve the mutual exclusion before the mutual exclusion before the service must resolve the mutual exclusion before the mutual exclusion before the	ormal. If a consumer's policy (involving human ce consumer/provider	Comment [PFB22]: Issue 46
<ul> <li>management are discussed in Section 5.3.4.</li> <li>3.2.5.3 Communication</li> <li>Communication</li> <li>A process involving the exchange of information between a sender and one or more recipients and that ideally culminates in mutual understanding between them.</li> <li>A communication involves a message, a sender of the message and at least one intended recipient, who must be able to correctly interpret the message - b ral feast those parts of the message relevant to sender and recipient in the particular context. Each must perform its respective role in order for the communication in pay sender and a recipient. In some situations, the sender may not be aware of the recipient. However, without both a sender and a recipient, there is no communication. A given communication is the a simple one-way transmission and dees not necessarily involve interaction between the parties require a response. It can be a simple one-way transmission requiring no further actively by the recipient. However, interaction does, necessarily, involve communication. A given commonication is the a simple one-way transmission and dees not necessarily involve interaction between the parties require a response. It can be a simple one way transmission requiring no further actively by the recipient. However, interaction does, necessarily, involve communication. More formally, we can as y that a communication in terms of a shared understanding of a common vocabulary (or mediation among vocabularies) and of the purpose of the communication. More formally, we can say that a communication.</li> <li>In a SOA ecceystem, senders and recipients can be stakeholders, particular form and involve terms not found in everyday human communication.</li> <li>Stated understanding is vial to a trusted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecceystems and important in communications as described above, as well as a driver</li></ul>	944 945 946 947	responsible for ensuring th enforcement may be deleg contracting parties to act (f condition covered by the c	at any constraints in the policy or contract are enfo ated to a different mechanism. A contract does no or example to use a service) but it does constrain a ontract occurs (for example, when a service is invo	prced, although the actual t necessarily oblige the how they act if and when the iked and used).	
951       Communication         952       A process involving the exchange of information between a sender and one or more recipients and that ideally cultinates in mutual understanding between them.       Communication involves a message, a sender of the message and at least one intended recipient, who must be able to correctly interpret the message – bir at least those parts of the message relevant to communication in the particular context. Each must perform its respective role in order for the communication may involve any number of recipients. In some situations, the sender may not be aware of the recipient. However, without both a sender and a recipient, there is no communication. A given communication integration to be a simple one-way transmission requiring no turbar action by the recipient. However, interaction does, necessarily, involve communication. Message interpretation can itself be characterized in terms of semartic engagement: the proper understanding of a message in a given context.       Comment [KJL25]: Comment 50         968       We can characterize the necessary modes of interpretation in terms of a shared understanding of a common vocabulary (or mediation among vocabularies) and of the purpose of the communication. More formally, we can say that a communication has a combination of message and purpose.       Comment [PFB26]: Issue 48         971       Shared understanding of a scoredic in destable/budgers, participants or actors, depending to formally, we can say that a communication.       Comment [PFB26]: Issue 48         972       In a SOA eccesystem, <u>Benders and necipients can be stakeholders</u> , participants or actors, depending to formally, we can say that a communication.       Comment [PFB26]: Issue 48         973       Darde				acts in the context of	
952       A process Involving the exchange of information between them.         953       A communication involves a message, a sender of the message and at least one intended recipient, who must be able to correctly interpret the message - br at least those parts of the message relevant to sender and recipient. In the particular context. Each must perform its respective role in order for the communication in be successful; failing which communication is not effective.       Comment [PFB23]: Issue 48         956       A communication may involve any number of recipients. In some situations, the sender may not be aware of the recipient. However, without both a sender and a recipient, there is no communication. A given ommunication is to effective.       Comment [PFB24]: Issue 247         957       Communication into the interpret the message interpretation can be a simple one-way transmission and dece not necescarily involve interaction between the partice require a response; it can be a simple one-way transmission and dece not necescarily involve interaction between the partice require an essage in a given context.       Comment [KJL25]: Comment 50         958       We can characterize the necessary modes of interpretation in terms of a shared understanding of a common vocabulary (or mediation among vocabularies) and of the purpose of the communication. More formally, we can say that a communication is a specific interaction with the SOA-based system is in progress. Communication resemble human speech: Indeed system-level machine-to-machine or munication is typically highly sylized in form. It may take a particular form and involve terms not found in everyday human communication.       Comment [PFB26]: Issue 48         974       Shared understanding is vital to a t	950	3.2.5.3 Communicati	on		
933       and that ideally culminates in mutual understanding between them.         944       A communication involves a message, a sender of the message and at least one intended recipient, who must be able to correctly interpret the message those parts of the message relevant to sender and recipient in the particular context. Each must perform its respective role in order for the communication may involve any number of recipients. In some situations, the sender may not be aware of the recipient. However, without both a sender and a recipient, there is no communication. A given communication and involve any number of recipients. In some situations, the sender may not be aware of the recipient. However, interaction does, necessarily involve interaction between the parties requires a response; it can be a simple one-way transmission actient by the recipient. However, interaction does, necessarily, involve communication. More formally, we can say that a communication in terms of a shared understanding of a common vocabulary (or mediation among vocabularies) and of the purpose of the communication. More formally, we can say that a communication has a combination of message and purpose.       Comment [PFB26]: Issue 48         971       communication seed not resemble human speech: indeed system-level machine-to-machine found in everyday human communication.       Comment [PFB26]: Issue 48         973       3.2.5.4 Semantics and Semantic Engagement fourd in everyday human communication.       The recipient set a shared understanding is a prerequisite to joint action being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystems and important in communications as described above, as well as a driver for policies and other aspects of the ecosystem.         974       Shared understanding	951	Communication			
mist be able to correctly interpret the message is a chose parts of the message relevant to sender and recipient in the particular context.       Comment [PFB24]: Issue 247         956       A communication may involve any number of recipients. In some situations, the sender may not be aware of the recipient. However, without both a sender and a recipient, there is no communication. A given ormunication is an be a simple one-way transmission requiring no further action by the recipient. However, interaction does, necessarily involve communication. A given between the parties require a response it can be a simple one-way transmission requiring no further action by the recipient. However, interaction does, necessarily, involve communication. A given understanding of a message in a given context.       Comment [KJL25]: Comment 50         966       We can characterize the necessary modes of interpretation in terms of a shared understanding of a common vocabulary (or mediation among vocabularies) and of the purpose of the communication. More formally, we can say that a communication has a combination of message and purpose.       Comment [PFB26]: Issue 48         971       Shared understanding is typical in form. It may take a particular form and involve terms not form and involve terms not form and involve terms not form in everyday human communication.       Comment [PFB26]: Issue 48         973 <b>3.2.5.4 Semantics and Semantic Engagement</b> Final east therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystems and important in communicatios as described above, as well as a driver for policies and other aspects of the ecosystem.         974       Shared understanding is vital to a trusted and effective ecosystem and important in communications as described above, as well a				nd one or more recipients	
9966       sender and recipient in the particular context. Each must perform its respective role in order for the       Communication to be successful; failing which communication is not effective.         957       A communication may involve any number of recipients. In some situations, the sender may not be aware of the recipient. However, without both a sender and a recipient, there is no communication. A given communication is particular a closely the recipient. However, interaction does, necessarily involve communication. A given actively the recipient. However, interaction does, necessarily involve communication.       Comment [FJE24]: Issue 247         968       A communication may involve any number of recipients. In some situations, the sender may not be aware of the recipient. However, without both a sender and a recipient, there is no communication. A given communication is a simple one-way transmission and doee-not necessarily involve interaction is during no further active a simple one-way transmission and doee not necessarily involve interaction in the parties require a response; it can be a simple one way transmission and doee not necessarily involve interaction in the proper understanding of a message in a given context.       Comment [KJL25]: Comment 50         966       We can characterize the necessary modes of interpretation in terms of a shared understanding of a specific interaction with the SOA-based system is in progress. Communications need not resemble human speech: indeed system-level machine-to-machine communication.       Comment [PFB26]: issue 48         971       Shared understanding is vial to a trusted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystem and in portar					Comment IDED221, Jacua 40
<ul> <li>A communication to be successful; faund which communication is not effective.</li> <li>A communication may involve any number of recipients. In some situations, the sender may not be aware of the recipient. However, without both a sender and a recipient, there is no communication. A given communication is no be a simple one-way transmission and does not necessarily involve interaction between the parties require a response; it can be a simple one-way transmission requiring no further action by the recipient. However, interaction does, necessarily involve communication.</li> <li>Message interpretation can itself be characterized in terms of semantic engagement: the proper understanding of a message in a given context.</li> <li>We can characterize the necessary modes of interpretation in terms of a shared understanding of a common vocabulary (or mediation among vocabularies) and of the purpose of the communication. More formally, we can say that a communication has a combination of message and purpose.</li> <li>In a SOA ecosystem, senders and recipients can be stakeholders, participants or actors, depending on whether execution context is being estakeholders, participants or actors, depending on whether execution context is being estakeholders, participants or actors.</li> <li>In a SOA ecosystem, sender is a recipient to any stake a particular form and involve terms not found in everyday human communication.</li> <li><b>3.2.5.4 Semantics and Semantic Engagement</b></li> <li>Shared understanding is vital to a trusted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystems and important in communications as described above, as well as a driver or policies and other aspects of the ecosystem.</li> <li>In order to arrive at a shared understanding wherever this is necessary within the ecosystem, a message is recipient must effectively understand and process according statements, made in the message is statements in a ma</li></ul>	956	sender and recipient in the	particular context. Each must perform its respective	<u>/e</u> role in order for the	
<ul> <li>of the recipient. However, without both a sender and a recipient, there is no communication. A given communication ban be a simple one-way transmission and deee not necessarily involve interaction between the parties recuire a response; it can be a simple one-way transmission requiring no further action by the recipient. However, interaction does, necessarily, involve communication.</li> <li>Message interpretation can itself be characterized in terms of semantic engagement: the proper understanding of a message in a given context.</li> <li>We can characterize the necessary modes of interpretation in terms of a shared understanding of a common vocabulary (or mediation among vocabularies) and of the purpose of the communication. More formally, we can say that a communication has a combination of message and purpose.</li> <li>In a SOA ecosystem, senders and recipients can be stakeholders, participants or actors, depending on whether execution context is being established or a specific interaction with the SOA-based system is in progress. Communication.</li> <li>stypically highly stylized in form. It may take a particular form and involve terms not found in everyday human communication.</li> <li>Shared understanding is vital to a trusted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystems and important in communications as described above, as well as a driver for policies and other aspects of the ecosystem.</li> <li>In order to arrive at a shared understanding wherever this is necessary within the ecosystem, a message is recipient must effectively understand and process according statements, made in the particular context. Within a SOA-based system, non-human actors must at least be able to parse a message correctly (syntax) and act on the message is statements in a manner consistent with the sender's intent.</li> </ul>			-	-	· · ·
<ul> <li>between the parties require a response; it can be a simple one-way transmission requiring no further action by the recipient. However, interaction does, necessarily, involve communication.</li> <li>Message interpretation can itself be characterized in terms of semantic engagement: the proper understanding of a message in a given context.</li> <li>We can characterize the necessary modes of interpretation in terms of a shared understanding of a common vocabulary (or mediation among vocabularies) and of the purpose of the communication. More formally, we can say that a communication has a combination of message and purpose.</li> <li>In a SOA ecosystem, senders and recipients can be stakeholders, participants or actors, depending on whether execution context is being established or a specific interaction with the SOA-based system is in progress. Communications need not resemble human speech: indeed system-level machine-to-machine communication is typically highly stylized in form. It may take a particular form and involve terms not found in everyday human communication.</li> <li>Shared understanding is vital to a trusted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action being carried out as intended. Semantic Engagement</li> <li>In order to arrive at a shared understanding wherever this is necessary within the ecosystem, a message's recipient must effectively understand and process aeentione-statements, made in the sender's message, in a manner appropriate and sufficient to the particular context. Within a SOA-based system, non-human actors must at least be able to parse a message correctly (syntax) and act on the message's statements in a manner consistent with the sender's intent.</li> </ul>	959	of the recipient. However,	without both a sender and a recipient, there is no c	ommunication. A given	
<ul> <li>action by the recipient. However, interaction does, necessarily, involve communication.</li> <li>Message interpretation can itself be characterized in terms of semantic engagement: the proper understanding of a message in a given context.</li> <li>We can characterize the necessary modes of interpretation in terms of a shared understanding of a common vocabulary (or mediation among vocabularies) and of the purpose of the communication. More formally, we can say that a communication has a combination of message and purpose.</li> <li>In a SOA ecosystem, senders and recipients can be stakeholders, participants or actors, depending on whether execution context is being established or a specific interaction with the SOA-based system is in progress. Communication is typically highly stylized in form. It may take a particular form and involve terms not found in everyday human communication.</li> <li>3.2.5.4 Semantics and Semantic Engagement</li> <li>Shared understanding is vital to a trusted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystems and important in communications as described above, as well as a driver for policies and other aspects of the ecosystem.</li> <li>In order to arrive at a shared understanding wherever this is necessary within the ecosystem, a message's recipient must effectively understand and process aeeerfione_statements, made in the sender's message, in a manner appropriate and sufficient to the particular context. Within a SOA-based system, non-human actors must at least be able to parse a message correctly (syntax) and act on the message's statements in a manner consistent with the sender's intent.</li> </ul>		communication can be a s	<u>mple one-way transmission and does not necessa</u>	rily involve interaction sion requiring no further	
<ul> <li>understanding of a message in a given context.</li> <li>We can characterize the necessary modes of interpretation in terms of a shared understanding of a common vocabulary (or mediation among vocabularies) and of the purpose of the communication. More formally, we can say that a communication has a combination of message and purpose.</li> <li>In a SOA ecosystem, senders and recipients can be stakeholders, participants or actors, depending on whether execution context is being established or a specific interaction with the SOA-based system is in progress. Communications need not resemble human speech: indeed system-level machine-to-machine formally, we can say that a communication.</li> <li><b>3.2.5.4 Semantics and Semantic Engagement</b></li> <li>Shared understanding is vital to a trusted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystems and important in communications as described above, as well as a driver for policies and other aspects of the ecosystem.</li> <li>In order to arrive at a shared understanding wherever this is necessary within the ecosystem, a message's recipient must effectively understand and process aeertione statements, made in the sender's message, in a manner appropriate and sufficient to the particular context. Within a SOA-based system, non-human actors must at least be able to parse a message correctly (syntax) and act on the message's statements in a manner consistent with the sender's intent.</li> </ul>					Comment [KJL25]: Comment 50
<ul> <li>common vocabulary (or mediation among vocabularies) and of the purpose of the communication. More</li> <li>formally, we can say that a communication has a combination of message and purpose.</li> <li>In a SOA ecosystem, senders and recipients can be stakeholders, participants or actors, depending on</li> <li>whether execution context is being established or a specific interaction with the SOA-based system is in</li> <li>progress. Communications need not resemble human speech: indeed system-level machine-to-machine</li> <li>communication is typically highly stylized in form. It may take a particular form and involve terms not</li> <li>found in everyday human communication.</li> <li>3.2.5.4 Semantics and Semantic Engagement</li> <li>Shared understanding is vital to a trusted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action</li> <li>being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystems and</li> <li>important in communications as described above, as well as a driver for policies and other aspects of the</li> <li>ecosystem.</li> <li>In order to arrive at a shared understanding wherever this is necessary within the ecosystem, a</li> <li>message's recipient_must effectively understand and process ascertione-statements, made in the</li> <li>sender's message, in a manner appropriate and sufficient to the particular context. Within a SOA-based</li> <li>system, non-human actors must at least be able to parse a message correctly (syntax) and act on the</li> <li>message's statements in a manner consistent with the sender's intent.</li> </ul>		<b>0</b> 1	•	agement: the proper	
<ul> <li>whether execution context is being established or a specific interaction with the SOA-based system is in progress. Communications need not resemble human speech: indeed system-level machine-to-machine communication is typically highly stylized in form. It may take a particular form and involve terms not found in everyday human communication.</li> <li><b>3.2.5.4 Semantics and Semantic Engagement</b></li> <li>Shared understanding is vital to a trusted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystems and important in communications as described above, as well as a driver for policies and other aspects of the ecosystem.</li> <li>In order to arrive at a shared understanding wherever this is necessary within the ecosystem, a message's recipient must effectively understand and process ascertions statements, made in the sender's message, in a manner appropriate and sufficient to the particular context. Within a SOA-based system, non-human actors must at least be able to parse a message correctly (syntax) and act on the message's statements in a manner consistent with the sender's intent.</li> </ul>	966	common vocabulary (or me	ediation among vocabularies) and of the purpose of	f the communication. More	
<ul> <li>progress. Communications need not resemble human speech: indeed system-level machine-to-machine</li> <li>communication is typically highly stylized in form. It may take a particular form and involve terms not</li> <li>found in everyday human communication.</li> <li>3.2.5.4 Semantics and Semantic Engagement</li> <li>Shared understanding is vital to a trusted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action</li> <li>being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystems and</li> <li>important in communications as described above, as well as a driver for policies and other aspects of the</li> <li>ecosystem.</li> <li>In order to arrive at a shared understanding wherever this is necessary within the ecosystem, a</li> <li>message's recipient must effectively understand and process accertione statements, made in the</li> <li>sender's message, in a manner appropriate and sufficient to the particular context. Within a SOA-based</li> <li>system, non-human actors must at least be able to parse a message correctly (syntax) and act on the</li> <li>message's statements in a manner consistent with the sender's intent.</li> </ul>					Comment [PFB26]: Issue 48
<ul> <li>found in everyday human communication.</li> <li>3.2.5.4 Semantics and Semantic Engagement</li> <li>Shared understanding is vital to a trusted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystems and important in communications as described above, as well as a driver for policies and other aspects of the ecosystem.</li> <li>In order to arrive at a shared understanding wherever this is necessary within the ecosystem, a message's recipient must effectively understand and process assertions statements, made in the sender's message, in a manner appropriate and sufficient to the particular context. Within a SOA-based system, non-human actors must at least be able to parse a message correctly (syntax) and act on the message's statements in a manner consistent with the sender's intent.</li> </ul>		progress. Communications	s need not resemble human speech: indeed system	n-level machine-to-machine	
<ul> <li>Shared understanding is vital to a trusted and effective ecosystem and is a prerequisite to joint action</li> <li>being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystems and</li> <li>important in communications as described above, as well as a driver for policies and other aspects of the</li> <li>ecosystem.</li> <li>In order to arrive at a shared understanding wherever this is necessary within the ecosystem, a</li> <li>message's recipient must effectively understand and process assertions statements, made in the</li> <li>sender's message, in a manner appropriate and sufficient to the particular context. Within a SOA-based</li> <li>system, non-human actors must at least be able to parse a message correctly (syntax) and act on the</li> <li>message's statements in a manner consistent with the sender's intent.</li> </ul>				n and involve terms not	
<ul> <li>being carried out as intended. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout SOA ecosystems and</li> <li>important in communications as described above, as well as a driver for policies and other aspects of the</li> <li>ecosystem.</li> <li>In order to arrive at a shared understanding <u>wherever this is necessary within the ecosystem</u>, a</li> <li><u>message's recipient</u> must effectively understand and process <u>assertions-statements</u>, made in the</li> <li><u>sender's message</u>, in a manner appropriate <u>and sufficient</u> to the particular context. <u>Within a SOA-based</u></li> <li>system, non-human actors must at least be able to parse a message correctly (syntax) and act on the</li> <li>message's statements in a manner consistent with the sender's intent.</li> </ul>	973	3.2.5.4 Semantics an	d Semantic Engagement		
<ul> <li>979 message's recipient must effectively understand and process assertions-statements, made in the</li> <li>980 sender's message, in a manner appropriate and sufficient to the particular context. Within a SOA-based</li> <li>981 system, non-human actors must at least be able to parse a message correctly (syntax) and act on the</li> <li>982 message's statements in a manner consistent with the sender's intent.</li> </ul>	975 976	being carried out as intend important in communicatio	ed. Semantics are therefore pervasive throughout	SOA ecosystems and	
	979 980 981	message's recipient must sender's message, in a ma system, non-human actors	effectively understand and process <del>assertions <u>stat</u>(</del> anner appropriate <u>and sufficient</u> to the particular co	ements, made in the ntext. Within a SOA-based	
		message's statements in a	manner consistent with the sender's intent		

Standards Track Work Product

Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

Page 34 of 123

983 Understanding and interpreting those assertions in a SOA-based system allows all the actors in any particular joint action to "know" what may be expected of them. An actor can potentially "understand" an 984 assertion in a number of ways, but it is specifically the process of arriving at a shared understanding that 985 is important in the ecosystem. This process is semantic engagement and it takes place in different forms 986 throughout the SOA ecosystem. It can be instantaneous or progressively achieved. Participants - who 987 play the role both as actors in the SOA-based system and as stakeholders in social structures and the 988 wider ecosystem - can be pivotal in resolving problems of understanding and determining when there is a 989 level of engagement appropriate and sufficient to the particular context. 990

#### 991 Semantic Engagement

992 The process by which an **actor** engages with a set of assertions based on that actor's 993 interpretation and understanding of those assertions.

994 Different actors have differing capabilities and requirements for understanding assertions. This is true for both human and non-human actors. For example, a purchase order process does not require that a 995

996 message forwarding agent 'understand' the purchase order, but a processing agent does need to 'understand' the purchase order in order to know what to do with the order once received. 997

998 The impact of any assertion can only be fully understood in terms of specific social contexts that

necessarily include the actors that are involved. For example, a policy statement that governs the actions 999

1000 relating to a particular resource may have a different impact or purpose for the participant that owns the

resource than for the actor that is trying to access it: the former understands the purpose of the policy as 1001

1002 a statement of enforcement - the latter understands it as a statement of constraint.

#### 3.3 Action in a SOA Ecosystem Model 1003

1004 Participants cannot always achieve desired results by leveraging resources in their own ownership

domain. This unfulfilled need leads them to seek and leverage services provided by other participants and 1005 1006 using resources beyond their ownership and control. The participants identify service providers with which

they think they can interact to achieve their objective and engage in joint action with those other actors 1007

(service providers) in order to bring about the desired outcome. The SOA ecosystem provides the 1008

1009 environment in which this happens.

1010 An action model is put forth a-priori by the service provider, and is effectively an undertaking by the

1011 service provider that the actions - identified in the action model and invoked consistent with the process

1012 model - will result in the described real world effect. The action model describes the actions leading to a

real-world effect. A potential service consumer - who is interested in a particular outcome to satisfy their 1013 need - must understand those actions as capable of achieving that desired outcome.

1014

1015 When the consumer "invokes" a service, a joint action is started as identified in the action model, 1016 consistent with the temporal sequence as defined by the process model, and where the consumer and

- the provider are the two parties of the joint action. Additionally, the consumer can be assured that the 1017
- 1018 identified real-world effects will be accomplished through evidence provided via the service description.

1019 Since the service provider does not know about all potential service consumers, the service provider may

1020 also describe what additional constraints are necessary in order for the service consumer to invoke

particular actions, and thus participate in the joint action. These additional constraints, along with others 1021 that might not be listed, are preconditions for the joint action to occur and/or continue (as per the process 1022

1023 model), and are referred to in the SOA-RM as execution context. Execution context goes all the way from

human beings involved in aligning policies, semantics, network connectivity and communication 1024

1025 protocols, to the automated negotiation of security protocols and end-points as the individual actions 1026 proceed through the process model.

1027 Also, it is important to note that both actions and real world effect are 'fractal' recursive in nature, in the 1028 sense that they can often be broken down into more and more granularity depending on how they are 1029 examined and what level of detail is important.

1030 All of these things are important to getting to the core of participants' concern in a SOA ecosystem: the

1031 ability to leverage resources or capabilities to achieve a desired outcome, and in particular where those 1032 resources or capabilities do not belong to them or are beyond their direct control. i.e., that are outside of 1033 their ownership boundary.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07

Standards Track Work Product

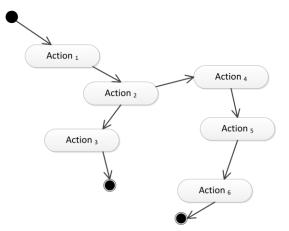
Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

11 May 2012 Page 35 of 123

1034 In order to use such resources, participants must be able to identify their own needs; state those needs in 1035 the form of requirements; compose or identify a suitable business solution using resources or capabilities that will meet their needs; and engage in joint action - the coordinated set of actions that participants 1036 1037 pursue in order to achieve measurable results in furtherance of their goals. Comment [PFB27]: Issue 53, part 1038 In order to act in a way that is appropriate and consistent, participants must communicate with each other 1039 about their own goals, objectives and policies, and those of others. This is the main concern of Semantic 1040 Engagement. 1041 A key aspect of joint action revolves around the trust that both parties must exhibit in order to participate 1042 in the joint action. The willingness to act and a mutual understanding of both the information exchanged and the expected results is the particular focus of Sections 3.2.5.1 and 3.2.5.4. 1043 1044 3.3.1 Services Reflecting Business 1045 The SOA paradigm often emphasizes the interface through which service interaction is accomplished. While this enables predictable integration in the sense of traditional software development, the prescribed 1046 interface alone does not guarantee that services will be composable into business solutions. 1047 **Business Solution** 1048 1049 A set of defined interactions that combine implemented or notional business functionality in 1050 order to address a set of business needs. 1051 Composability 1052 The ability to combine individual services, each providing defined business functionality, so as 1053 to provide more complex business solutions. 1054 To achieve composability, capabilities must be identified that serve as building blocks for business solutions. In a SOA ecosystem, these building blocks are captured as services representing well-defined 1055 1056 business functions, operating under well-defined policies and other constraints, and generating welldefined real world effects. These service building blocks should be relatively stable so as not to force 1057 1058 repeated changes in the compositions that utilize them, but should also embody SOA attributes that 1059 readily support creating compositions that can be varied to reflect changing circumstances. 1060 The SOA paradigm emphasizes both composition of services and opacity of how a given service is 1061 implemented. With respect to opacity, the SOA-RM states that the service could carry out its described functionality through one or more automated and/or manual processes that in turn could invoke other 1062 available services. 1063 1064 Any composition can itself be made available as a service and the details of the business functionality. 1065 conditions of use, and effects are among the information documented in its service description. 1066 Composability is important because many of the benefits of a SOA approach assume multiple uses for services, and multiple use requires that the service deliver a business function that is reusable in multiple 1067 business solutions. Simply providing a Web Service interface for an existing IT artifact does not, in 1068 1069 general, create opportunities for sharing business functions. Furthermore, the use of tools to auto-1070 generate service software interfaces will not guarantee services than can effectively be used within 1071 compositions if the underlying code represents programming constructs rather than business functions. In 1072 such cases, services that directly expose the software details will be as brittle to change as the underlying 1073 code and will not exhibit the characteristic of loose coupling. 3.3.2 Activity, Action, and Joint Action 1074 In general terms, entities act in order to fulfill particular objectives. More precisely, they generate activity. 1075 An activity is made up of specific Actions (or other Activities) and is formally defined in [ISO/IEC 10746] 1076 1077 as "a single-headed directed acyclic graph of actions..."<sup>4</sup> It is most clearly understood diagrammatically:

<sup>4</sup> See [ISO/IEC 10746] Part 2: Foundations

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 36 of 123



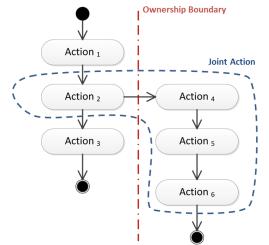
1079 Figure 11: An Activity, expressed informally as a graph of Actions, with a single Start point and alternative End points

1080 What constitutes an Action or an Activity will be a matter of context. For the SOA-RAF, an Action

1081 represents the smallest and most discrete activity that needs to be modeled for a given Viewpoint.

The form of Activity that is of most interest within a SOA ecosystem is that involving Actions as defined below and their interaction across ownership boundaries (and thus involving interaction between more than one actor) – we call this **joint action**. In Figure 12 below, one line of activity (on the left) can be completed thru Action<sub>3</sub> without crossing any ownership boundary but the alternative path, starting at

1086 <u>Action<sub>4</sub>, can only be completed as a result of joint action across an ownership boundary</u>:



1087

1088 Figure 12: Activity involving Actions across an ownership boundary

### 1089 Action

1090 The application of intent <u>by an **actor**</u> to cause an effect.

1091 The aspect of action that distinguishes it from mere force or accident is that someone *intends* that the 1092 action achieves a desired objective or effect. This definition of action is very general. In the case of SOA, 1093 we are mostly concerned with actions that take place within a system and have specific effects on the

1094 SOA ecosystem – <u>defined in section</u> 3.2.3 <u>as what we call</u> real world effects. The actual real world effect 1095 of an action, however, may go beyond the intended effect.

1096 In order for multiple actors to participate in a joint action, they must each act according to their role within

1097 the joint action. This is achieved through communication and messaging.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Page 37 of 123

- 1098 Communication - the formulation, transmission, receipt and interpretation of messages - is the
- 1099 foundation of all joint actions within the SOA ecosystem, given the inherent separation - often across ownership boundaries - of actors in the system.
- 1100
- Communication between actors requires that they play the roles of 'sender' or 'receiver' of messages as 1101
- 1102 appropriate to a particular action - although it is not necessarily required that they both be active
- 1103 simultaneously.
- 1104 An actor sends a message in order to communicate with other actors. The communication itself is often
- 1105 not intended as part of the desired real world effect but rather includes messages that seek to establish, 1106 manage, monitor report on, and guide the joint action throughout its execution.
- 1107 Like communication, joint action usually involves different actors. However, joint action - resulting from
- 1108 the deliberate actions undertaken by different actors - intentionally impacts shared state within the
- system leading to real world effects. 1109
- 1110 Joint Action
- 1111 The coordinated set of actions involving the efforts of two or more actors to achieve an effect.
- 1112 Note that the effect of a joint action is not always equivalent to one or more effects of the individual
- actions of the actors involved, i.e., it may be more than the sum of the parts. 1113
- Different perspectives lead to either communication or joint action as being considered most important. 1114
- For example, from the viewpoint of ecosystem security, the integrity of the communications may be 1115
- 1116 dominant; from the viewpoint of ecosystem governance, the integrity of the joint action may be dominant.
- 1117

#### 3.3.3 State and Shared State 1118

1119 State

#### 1120 The condition of an entity at a particular time.

1121 State is characterized by a set of facts that is true of the entity. In principle, the total state of an entity (or 1122 the world as a whole) is unbounded. In practice, we are concerned only with a subset of the state of an 1123 entity that is measurable and useful in a given context.

For example, the total state of a light bulb includes the temperature of the filament of the bulb, the 1124 1125 composition of the glass, the dirt that is on the bulb's surface and so on. However, someone needing more light to read by is only really interested in whether the bulb is 'on' or 'off' and if it is working properly. 1126 That individual's characterization of the state of the bulb reduces to the fact: 'bulb is now on'. 1127

1128 In a SOA ecosystem, there is a distinction between the set of facts about an entity that only that entity can access and the set of facts that may be accessible to others, notably actors in the SOA-based system. 1129

#### 1130 **Private State**

1131 That part of an entity's state that is knowable by, and accessible to, only that entity.

#### 1132 Shared State

1133

1148

1149

1153

1154

1159

That part of an entity's state that is knowable by, and may be accessible to, other actors.

1134 Note that shared state does not imply that the state is accessible to other actors. It simply refers to that subset of state that may be accessed by other actors. This will principally be the case when actors need 1135 1136 to participate in joint actions.

1137 It is the aggregation of the shared states of pertinent entities that constitutes the desired effect of a joint 1138 action. Thus the change to this shared state is what is experienced in the wider ecosystem as a real world 1139 effect

#### 3.4 Architectural Implications 1140

#### 3.4.1 Social structures 1141

1142 A SOA ecosystem's participants are organized into various forms of social structure. Not all social

structures are hierarchical: a SOA ecosystem should be able to incorporate peer-to-peer forms of 1143

1144 organization as well as hierarchic structures. In addition, it should be possible to identify and manage any

- constitutional agreements that define the social structures present in a SOA ecosystem. 1145
- 1146 Different social structures have different rules of engagement but predictable behavior is one of 1147
  - the underpinnings of trust. This therefore requires mechanisms to:
    - express constitutions and other organizing principles of participants; 0
    - $\circ$ inherit rules of engagement from parent to child social structures.
- Social structures have roles and members and this impacts who may be authorized to act and in 1150 what circumstances. This requires mechanisms to: 1151 1152
  - identify and manage members of social structures 0
  - Identify and manage attributes of the members 0
  - describe roles and role adoption 0
- Social structures overlap and interact, giving rise to situations in which rules of engagement may 1155 conflict. In addition, a given actor may be a member of multiple social structures and the social 1156 1157 structures may be associated with different jurisdictions. This requires mechanisms to: 1158
  - identify the social structures that are active during a series of joint actions; 0
  - identify and resolve conflicts and inconsistencies. 0

#### 3.4.2 Resource and Ownership 1160

1161 Communication about and between, visibility into, and leveraging of resources requires the unambiguous identification of those resources. Ensuring unambiguous identities implies 1162

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Page 39 of 123

<ul> <li>Mechanism for assigning and guaranteeing uniqueness of globally unique identifier</li> </ul>	163	•	Mechanism fo	r assigning and	guaranteeing	uniqueness o	f globally	unique identifiers
---	-----	---	--------------	-----------------	--------------	--------------	------------	--------------------

- Identifying the extent of the enterprise over which the identifier needs to be understandable and unique
- Mechanism and framework for ensuring the <u>longevity</u> of identifiers (i.e., they cannot just change arbitrarily)

# 1168 3.4.3 Policies and Contracts

<ul> <li>Management of potentially large numbers of policies MUST be achievable</li> <li>Policies have owners         <ul> <li>Policies SHOULD be established by social structures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Policies may not be consistent with one another         <ul> <li>Policy conflict resolution techniques MUST exist and be in place</li> </ul> </li> <li>Agreements are <u>accepted</u> constraints-<u>agreed to</u> <ul> <li>Contracts SHOULD be enforced by mechanisms of the social structure</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
1179 <b>3.4.4 Communications as a Means of Mediating Action</b>	
1180 Using message exchange for mediating action implies	
<ul> <li>Ensuring correct identification of the structure of messages:         <ul> <li>Identifying the syntax of the message;</li> <li>Identifying the vocabularies used in the communication</li> <li>Identifying the higher-level structure of the communication, such as policy assertion contract enforcement, etc.</li> </ul> </li> <li>A principal objective of communication is to mediate action         <ul> <li>Messages convey actions and events</li> <li>Receiving a message is an action, but is not the same action as the action convey the message</li> <li>Actions are associated with objectives of the actors involved                 <ul> <li>Explicit representation of objectives may facilitate automated processing messages</li> <li>An actor agreeing to adopt an objective becomes responsible for that objective</li> </ul> </li> </ul></li></ul>	eyed by

# 1194 **3.4.5 Semantics**

- Semantics is pervasive in a SOA ecosystem. There are many forms of utterance that are relevant to the
   ecosystem: apart from communicated content there are <u>mission and policy statements</u>, goals, <u>objectives</u>,
- 1197 descriptions, and agreements which are all forms of utterance.
- 1198 The operation of the SOA ecosystem is significantly enhanced if
- A careful distinction is made between public semantics and private semantics. In particular, it MUST be possible for actors to process content such as communications, descriptions and policies solely on the basis of the public semantics of those utterances.
- A well founded semantics ensures that any assertions that are essential to the operator of the ecosystem (such as policy statements, and descriptions) have carefully chosen written expressions and associated decision procedures.
- The role of vocabularies as a focal point for multiple actors to be able to understand each other is critical. While no two actors can fully share their interpretation of elements of vocabularies, ensuring that they do understand the public meaning of vocabularies' elements is essential.

# 1208 3.4.6 Trust and Risk

1209 In traditional systems, the balance between trust and risk is achieved by severely restricting interactions1210 and by controlling the participants of a system.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Page 40 of 123

- 1211 It is important that actors are able to explicitly reason about both trust and risk in order to effectively
- 1212 participate in a SOA ecosystem. The more open and public the SOA ecosystem is, the more important it
- 1213 is for actors to be able to reason about their participation.

# 1214 3.4.7 Needs, Requirements and Capabilities

- 1215 In the process of capturing needs as requirements, and the subsequent requirements decomposition and 1216 allocation processes need to be informed by capabilities that already exist.
- Architecture needs to
   Take into acc
  - o Take into account existing capabilities available as services

# 1219 3.4.8 The Importance of Action

- Participants participate in a SOA ecosystem in order to get their needs met. This involves action; bothindividual actions and joint actions.
- 1222 Any architectural realization of a SOA ecosystem should address:
- How actions are modeled:

1224

1225

- Identifying the performer or agent of the action;
- the target of the action; and the
- 1226 o verb of the action.
- 1227 Any explicit models of joint action should take into account
- The choreography or orchestration that defines the joint action.
- The potential for multiple joint actions to be layered on top of each other

# 1230 4 Realization of a SOA Ecosystem view

1231

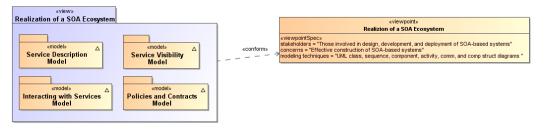
# 1232

1233

1230

Make everything as simple as possible but no simpler. Albert Einstein

- 1234 The *Realization of a SOA Ecosystem* view focuses on elements that are needed to support the discovery 1235 of and interaction with services. The key questions asked are "What are services, what support is needed 1236 and how are they realized?"
- 1237 The models in this view include the Service Description Model, the Service Visibility Model, the Interacting 1238 with Services Model, and the Policies and Contracts Model.



1239

1240 Figure 13 - Model Elements Described in the Realization of a SOA Ecosystem view

1241The Service Description Model informs the participants of what services exist and the conditions under1242which they can be used. The Policies and Contracts Model elaborates on the conditions under which1243service use is prescribed and agreements among participants in the SOA ecosystem. Some of those1244conditions follow from policies and agreements on policy that flow from the Policies and Contracts Model.

1244 The information in the service description as augmented by details of policy provides the basis for

1246 visibility as defined in the SOA Reference Model and captured in the Service Visibility Model. Finally, the

1247 process by which services are used under the defined conditions and agreements is described in the

1248 Interacting with Services Model.

# 1249 **4.1 Service Description Model**

A service description is an artifact, often document-based, that defines or references the information
needed to use, deploy, manage and otherwise control a service. This includes not only the information
and behavior models associated with a service that define interaction via the service interface but also
includes information needed to decide whether the service is appropriate for the current needs of the
service consumer. Thus, the service description should also include information such as service
reachability, service functionality, and the policies associated with a service.

1256 A service description artifact may be a single document or it may be an interlinked set of documents. For 1257 the purposes of this model, differences in representation are to be ignored, but the implications of a "web of documents" are discussed later in this section.

- 1259 There are several points to note regarding service description:
- The Reference Model states that one of the hallmarks of SOA is the large amount of associated description. The model presented below focuses on the description of services but it is equally important to consider the descriptions of the consumer, other participants, and needed resources other than services.
- Descriptions are inherently incomplete but may be determined as *sufficient* when it is possible for the participants to access and use the described services based only on the descriptions provided. This means that, at one end of the spectrum, a description along the lines of "That service on that machine" may be sufficient for the intended audience. On the other extreme, a service description with a machine-process-able description of the semantics of its operations

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Working Draft 07 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 42 of 123 Comment [KJL28]: Issue 168

Comment [KJL29]: Issue 170 (see also Issue 176)

and real world effects may be required for services accessed via automated service discoveryand planning systems.

- 1271 Descriptions come with context, i.e. a given description comprises information needed to 1272 adequately support the context. For example, a list of items can define a version of a service, but for many contexts an indicated version number is sufficient without the detailed list. The current 1273 model focuses on the description needed by a service consumer to understand what the service 1274 1275 does, under what conditions the service will do it, how well the service does it, and what steps are needed by the consumer to initiate and complete a service interaction. Such information also 1276 1277 enables the service provider to clearly specify what is being provided and the intended conditions of use 1278
- Descriptions change over time as, for example, the ingredients and nutrition information for food labeling continues to evolve. A requirement for transparency of transactions may require additional description for those associated contexts.
- Description always proceeds from a basis of what is considered "common knowledge". This may be social conventions that are commonly expected or possibly codified in law. It is impossible to describe everything and it can be expected that a mechanism as far reaching as SOA will also connect entities where there is inconsistent "common" knowledge.
- Descriptions become the collection point of information related to a service or any other resource, but it is not necessarily the originating point or the motivation for generating this information. In particular, given a SOA service as the access to an underlying capability, the service may point to some of the capability's previously generated description, e.g. a service providing access to a data store may also have access to information indicating the freshness of the data.
- 1291 These points emphasize that there is no one "right" description for all contexts and for all time. Several 1292 descriptions for the same subject may exist at the same time, and this emphasizes the importance of the 1293 description referencing source material maintained by that material's owner rather than having multiple
- 1294 copies that become out of synch and inconsistent.
- 1295 It may also prove useful for a description assembled for one context to cross-reference description
- assembled for another context as a way of referencing ancillary information without overburdening any single description. Rather than a single artifact, description can be thought of as a web of documents that
- 1298 enhance the total available description.
- 1299 This Reference Architecture Foundation uses the term service description for consistency with the
- concept defined in the Reference Model. Some SOA literature treats the idea of a "service contract" as
   equivalent to service description. In the SOA-RAF, the term service description is preferred. Replacing the
- 1302 term "service description" with the term "service contract" implies that just one side of the interaction is
- 1303 governing and misses the point that a single set of policies identified by a service description may lead to
- 1304 numerous contracts, i.e. service level agreements, leveraging the same description.

# 1305 4.1.1 The Model for Service Description

Figure 14 shows Service Description as a subclass of the general Description class, where Description is
 a subclass of the resource class as defined in Section 3.2.4.1.<sup>5</sup> In addition, each resource is assumed to
 have a description. The following section discusses the relationships among elements of general
 description and the subsequent sections focus on service description. Other descriptions, such as those

- description and the subsequent sections focus on service description. Other descriptions, such as i
- 1310 of participants, are important to SOA but are not individually elaborated in this document.

# 1311 4.1.1.1 Elements Common to General Description

- 1312 The general Description class is composed of a number of elements that are expected to be common
- 1313 among all descriptions supporting a service-oriented architecture. A registry/repository often contains a
- 1314 subset of the description instance, where the chosen subset is identified as that which facilitates
  - <sup>5</sup> Resources have descriptions and a description can be considered as a type of resource (and the description itself has further data such as its version or last revision) The model emphasizes this point but should not be interpreted too rigorously as allowing endless recursion.

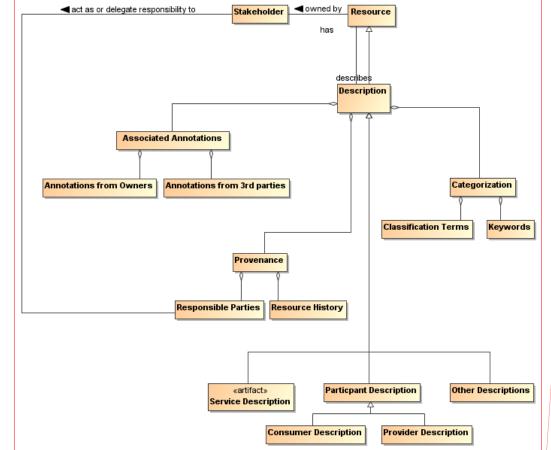
soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

11 May 2012 Page 43 of 123 Comment [PFB30]: This contradicts 3.1.3.1, which states only that "Description describes Resource"

Comment [KJL31]: Issue 173

discovery. Additional information contained in a more complete description may be needed to initiate andcontinue interaction.

# 1317



1318 1319 Figure 14 - General Description

### 1320 4.1.1.1.1 Provenance

1321 While the resource Identifier provides the means to know which subject and subject description are being 1322 considered, Provenance as related to the Description class provides information that reflects on the 1323 quality or usability of the subject. Provenance specifically identifies the stakeholder (human, defined role, 1324 organization, etc.) that assumes responsibility for the resource being described and tracks historic information that establishes a context for understanding what the resource provides and how it has 1325 changed over time. Responsibilities may be directly assumed by the stakeholder who owns a resource 1326 1327 (see Section 3.2.4.2) or the Owner may designate Responsible Parties for the various aspects of maintaining the resource and provisioning it for use by others. There may be more than one stakeholder 1328 1329 identified under Responsible Parties; for example, one stakeholder may be responsible for code 1330 maintenance while another is responsible for provisioning of the executable code.

### 1331 4.1.1.2 Keywords and Classification Terms

1332 A traditional element of description has been to associate the resource being described with predefined

1333 keywords or classification taxonomies that derive from referenceable formal definitions and vocabularies.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Page 44 of 123

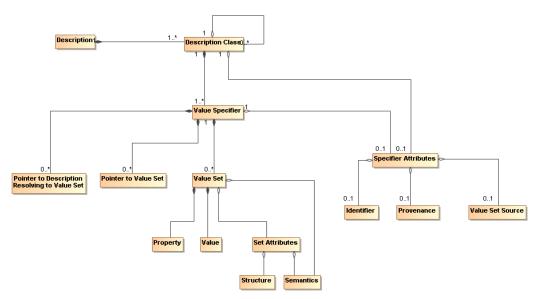
Comment [PFB32]: Recursion loop – every description is a resource, that requires a description Modifications needed for Issue 290 remove Consumer and Provider Description classes. 1334This Reference Architecture Foundation does not prescribe which vocabularies or taxonomies may be1335referenced, nor does it limit the number of keywords or classifications that may be associated with the1336resource. It does, however, state that a normative definition of any terms or keywords SHOULD be1337referenced, whether that be a representation in a formal ontology language, a pointer to an online1338dictionary, or any other accessible source. See Section 4.1.1.2 for further discussion on associating1339semantics with assigned values.

### 1340 4.1.1.1.3 Associated Annotations

1341 The general description instance may also reference associated documentation that is in addition to that 1342 considered necessary in this model. For example, the owner of a service may have documentation on 1343 best practices for using the service. Alternately, a third party may certify a service based on their own 1344 criteria and certification process; this may be vital information to other prospective consumers if they were 1345 willing to accept the certification in lieu of having to perform another certification themselves. Note, while 1346 the examples of Associated Documentation presented here are related to services, the concept applies 1347 equally to description of other entities.

## 1348 4.1.1.2 Assigning Values to Description Instances

1349



1350

1351 Figure 15 - Representation of a Description

Figure 14 shows the template for a general description, but individual description instances depend on the ability to associate meaningful values with the identified elements. Figure 15 shows a model for a collection of information that provides for value assignment and traceability for both the meaning and the source of a value. The model is not meant to replace existing or future schema or other structures that have or will be defined for specific implementations, but it is meant as guidance for the information such structures need to capture to generate sufficient description. It is expected that tools will be developed to

assist the user in populating description and auto-filling many of these fields, and in that context, this

1359 model provides guidance to the tool developers.

1360 In Figure 15, each class has an associated value specifier or is made up of components that eventually

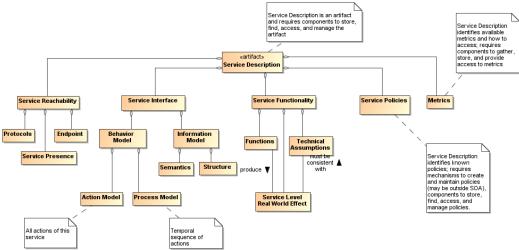
- 1361 resolve to a value specifier. For example, Description has several components, one of which is
- 1362 Categorization, which would have an associated value specifier.

1363 A value specifier consists of

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 45 of 123

- 1364 a collection of value sets with associated property-value pairs, pointers to such value sets, or 1365 pointers to descriptions that eventually resolve to value sets that describe the component; and
- 1366 attributes that qualify the value specifier and the value sets it contains.
- 1367 The qualifying attributes for the value specifier include
- 1368 an optional identifier that would allow the value set to be defined, accessed, and reused 1369 elsewhere:
- 1370 provenance information that identifies the party person (individual, role, or organization) who has responsibility for assigning the value sets to any description component; 1371
- an optional source of the value set, if appropriate and meaningful, e.g. if a particular data source 1372 1373 is mandated.
- 1374 If the value specifier is contained within a higher-level component (such as Service Description containing Service Functionality), the component may assume values from the attributes of its container. 1375
- Note, provenance as a qualifying attribute of a value specifier is different from provenance as part of an 1376 1377 instance of Description. Provenance for a service identifies those who own and are responsible for the
- service, as described in Section 3.2.4. Provenance for a value specifier identifies who is responsible for 1378
- choosing and assigning values to the value sets that comprise the value specifier. It is assumed that 1379
- granularity at the value specifier level is sufficient and provenance is not required for each value set. 1380
- 1381 The value set also has attributes that define its structure and semantics.
- 1382 The semantics of the value set property should be associated with a semantic context conveying 1383 the meaning of the property within the execution context, where the semantic context could vary from a free text definition to a formal ontology. 1384
- For numeric values, the structure would provide the numeric format of the value and the 1385 "semantics" would be conveyed by a dimensional unit with an identifier to an authoritative source 1386 1387 defining the dimensional unit and preferred mechanisms for its conversion to other dimensional 1388 units of like type.
- For nonnumeric values, the structure would provide the data structure for the value 1389 • 1390 representation and the semantics would be an associated semantic model. 1391
  - For pointers, architectural guidelines would define the preferred addressing scheme.
- 1392 The value specifier may indicate a default semantic model for its component value sets and the individual value sets may provide an override. 1393
- 1394 The property-value pair construct is introduced for the value set to emphasize the need to identify
- 1395 unambiguously both what is being specified and what is a consistent associated value. The further
- qualifying of Structure and Semantics in the Set Attributes allows for flexibility in defining the form of the 1396 1397 associated values.

Comment [PFB33]: Issue 291



# 1398 **4.1.1.3 Model Elements Specific to Service Description**

Comment [KJL34]: To be changed as per 3/29/2012 email and attachment (will resolve Issues 66, 176) Add event model or remove action and process models? (Issue 292)

### 1399 1400 Figure 16 - Service Description

1401 The major elements for the Service Description subclass follow directly from the areas discussed in the 1402 Reference Model. Here, we discuss the detail shown in Figure 16 and the purpose served by each element of service description. For example, Service Policies as included in Figure 16 indicate those 1403 1404 policies that affect conditions of use of the service; however, while the description may link to detailed policy documents, it is not the purpose of description to justify or elaborate on the rationale for the 1405 policies. Similarly, Service Interface Description as included in Figure 16 captures information about what 1406 1407 interactions are supported by the service via its Behavior Model and the information exchange needed to carry out those interactions in accordance to the service's Information Model; it is not the coded interface. 1408 1409 Note, the intent in the subsections that follow is to describe how a particular element, such as the service 1410 interface description, is reflected in the service description, not to elaborate on the details of that element. 1411 4.1.1.3.1 Service Interface Description 1412 As noted in the Reference Model, the service interface is the means for interacting with a service. For the SOA-RAF and as shown in Section 4.3 the service interface supports an exchange of messages, where 1413 1414 the message conforms to a referenceable message exchange pattern (MEP), 1415 the message payload conforms to the structure and semantics of the indicated information model, . the messages are used to denote events or actions against the service, where the actions are 1416 . 1417 specified in the action model and any required sequencing of actions is specified in the process 1418 model. 1419 The Service Interface Description element as shown in Figure 17 includes the information needed to carry 1420 out this message exchange in order to realize the service behavior described. In addition to the 1421 Information Model that conveys the Semantics and Structure of the message, the Service Interface 1422 Description indicates what behavior can be expected through interactions conveyed in the Action and 1423 Process Models.

Comment [KJL35]: Issue 176, part

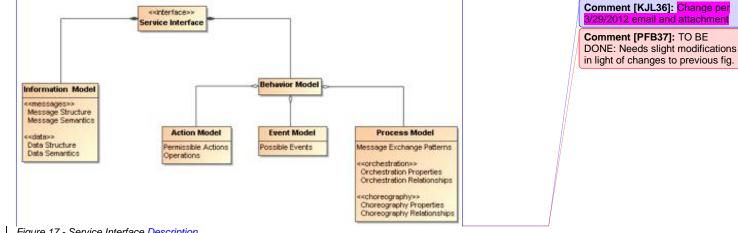


Figure 17 - Service Interface Description

- Note we distinguish the structure and semantics of the message from that of the underlying protocol that 1426 1427 conveys the message. The message structure may include nested structures that are independently 1428 defined, such as an enclosing envelope structure and an enclosed data structure.
- 1429 These aspects of messages are discussed in more detail in Section 4.3.2.

#### 1430 4.1.1.3.2 Service Reachability

1431 Service reachability, as modeled in Section 4.2.2.3 enables service participants to locate and interact with

- one another. To support service reachability, the service description should indicate the endpoints to 1432
- 1433 which a service consumer can direct messages to invoke actions and the protocol to be used for

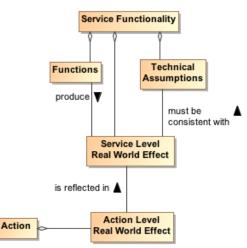
message exchange using that endpoint. 1434

1435 As generally applied to an action, the endpoint is the conceptual location where one applies an action; with respect to service description, it is the actual address where a message is sent. 1436

#### 1437 4.1.1.3.3 Service Functionality

1438 While the service interface and service reachability are concerned with the mechanics of using a service.

- 1439 service functionality and performance metrics (discussed in Section 4.1.1.3.4) describe what can be
- 1440 expected as a result of interacting with a service. Service Functionality, shown in Figure 16 as part of the
- overall Service Description model and extended in Figure 18, is a clear expression of service function(s) 1441 1442 and the real world effects of invoking the function. The Functions represent business activities in some
- 1443 domain that produce the desired real world effects.



1445 Figure 18 - Service Functionality

1446 The Service Functionality may also be limited by technical assumptions/constraints that underlie the

1447 effects that can result. Technical constraints are defined as domain specific restrictions and may express

1448 underlying physical limitations, such as flow speeds must be below sonic velocity or disk access that 1449 cannot be faster than the maximum for its host drive. Technical constraints are related to the underlying

1450 capability accessed by the service. In any case, the real world effects must be consistent with the 1451 technical assumptions/constraints.

1452 In Figure 16 and Figure 18, we specifically refer to the descriptions of Service Level and Action Level real Comment [KJL38]: Issue 176 world effects. 1453

#### 1454 Service Level Real World Effect

1455 A service level real world effect is a specific change in the state or the information returned as a 1456 result of interacting with a service.

#### 1457 Action Level Real World Effect

1458 An action level real world effect is a specific change in the state or the information returned as a 1459 result of interacting through a specific action.

1460 Service description describes the service as a whole while the component aspects should contribute to

1461 that whole. Thus, while individual Actions may contribute to the real world effects to be realized from

1462 interaction with the service, there would be a serious disconnect for Actions to contribute real world

- 1463 effects that could not consistently be reflected in the Service Level Real World Effects and thus the 1464 Service Functionality. The relationship to Action Level Real World Effects and the implications on defining
- 1465 the scope of a service are discussed in Section 4.1.2.1.
- 1466 Elements of Service Functionality may be expressed as natural language text, reference an existing 1467 taxonomy of functions or other formal model.

#### 4.1.1.3.4 Service Policies, Metrics, and Compliance Records 1468

1469 Policies prescribe the conditions and constraints for interacting with a service and impact the willingness

- 1470 to continue visibility with the other participants. Whereas technical constraints are statements of "physical" 1471 fact, policies are subjective assertions made by the service provider (sometimes as passed on from
- 1472 higher authorities).
- 1473 The service description provides a central location for identifying what policies have been asserted by the
- 1474 service provider. The specific representation of the policy, e.g. in some formal policy language, is outside icy.

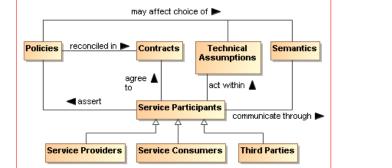
1475	of the service	description.	The service	description	would reference	e the normative	definition	of t	he polic

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.
	oopyngni e onoio opon zern. na ragne radenta.

11 May 2012 Page 49 of 123 1476 Policies may also be asserted by other service participants, as illustrated by the model shown in Figure

1477 19. Policies that are generally applicable to any interaction with the service are asserted by the service

1478 provider and included in the Service Policies section of the service description.



Comment [PFB39]: Issue 179 – modifications needed

#### 1479 1480

480 Figure 19 - Model for Policies and Contracts as related to Service Participants

1481 In Figure 19, we specifically refer to policies at the service level. In a similar manner to that discussed for 1482 Service Level vs. Action Level Real World Effects in Section 4.1.1.3.3, individual Actions may have 1483 associated policies stating conditions for performing the action, but these must be reflected in and be 1484 consistent with the policies made visible at the service level and thus the description of the service as a 1485 whole. The relationship to Action Level Policies and the implications on defining the scope of a service 1486 are discussed in Section 4.1.2.1.

As noted in Figure 19, the policies asserted may be reflected as Technical Assumptions/Constraints that available services or their underlying capabilities must be capable of meeting: it may similarly affect the

- semantics that can be used. For example of the former, there may be a policy that specifies the surge
- 1490 capacity to be accommodated by a server, but a service that is not designed to make use of the larger
- server capacity would not satisfy the intent of the policy and would not be appropriate to use. For the latter, a policy may require that only services that support interaction via a community-sponsored
- 1492 latter, a policy may require that o1493 vocabulary can be used.

### 1494 Contracts are agreements among the service participants. The contract may reconcile inconsistent 1495 policies asserted by the participants or may specify details of the interaction. Service level agreements 1496 (SLAs) are one of the commonly used categories of contracts.

1497 The definition and later enforcement of policies and contracts are predicated on the potential for

measurement; the relationships among the relevant concepts are shown in the model in Figure 20.
 Performance Metrics identify quantities that characterize the speed and quality of realizing the real world effects produced using the SOA service; in addition, policies and contracts may depend on

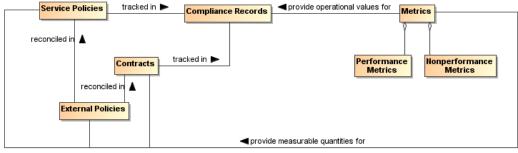
nonperformance metrics, such as whether a license is in place to use the service. Some of these metrics may reflect the underlying capability, some metrics may reflect processing of the SOA service, and some metrics may include expected network overhead. The metrics should be carefully defined to avoid confusion in exactly what is being reported, for example, a case where the service processing time is reported as if it were the total time including the capability and network processing but is only measuring the service processing. Some of these metrics reflect the underlying capability, e.g. a SOA service cannot

1507 respond in two seconds if the underlying capability is expected to take five seconds to do its processing; 1508 some metrics reflect the SOA service, e.g. the additional overhead introduced when making data access

1509 requests across the network.

1510

Comment [KJL40]: Issue 254



- 1511 1512 Figure 20 - Policies and Contracts, Metrics, and Compliance Records
- 1513 As with many quantities, the metrics associated with a service are not themselves defined by this Service
- 1514 Description Model because it is not known a priori which metrics are being collected or otherwise checked
- 1515 by the services, the SOA infrastructure, or other resources that participate in the SOA interactions.
- 1516 However, the service description SHOULD provide a placeholder (possibly through a link to an externally 1517 compiled list) for identifying which metrics are available and how these can be accessed.
- 1518 The use of metrics to evaluate compliance and the results of compliance evaluation SHOULD be
- maintained in compliance records and the means to access the compliance evaluation of IOCLD be maintained in compliance records and the means to access the compliance records MAY be included in
- 1520 the Service Policies portion of the service description. For example, the description may be in the form of
- 1521 static information (e.g. over the first year of operation, this service had a 91% availability), a link to a
- 1522 dynamically generated metric (e.g. over the past 30 days, the service has had a 93.3% availability), or
- access to a dynamic means to check the service for current availability (e.g., a ping). The relationship between service presence and the presence of the individual actions that can be invoked is discussed
- 1525 under Reachability in Section 4.2.2.3.
- 1526 Note, even when policies relate to the perspective of a single participant, policy compliance can be measured and policies may be enforceable without contractual agreement with other participants. While certain elements of contracts and contract compliance are likely private, public aspects of compliance
- 1529 should be reflected in the compliance record information referenced in the service description. This

1530 provides input to evidence that supports determining willingness as described in Section 3.2.5.1.

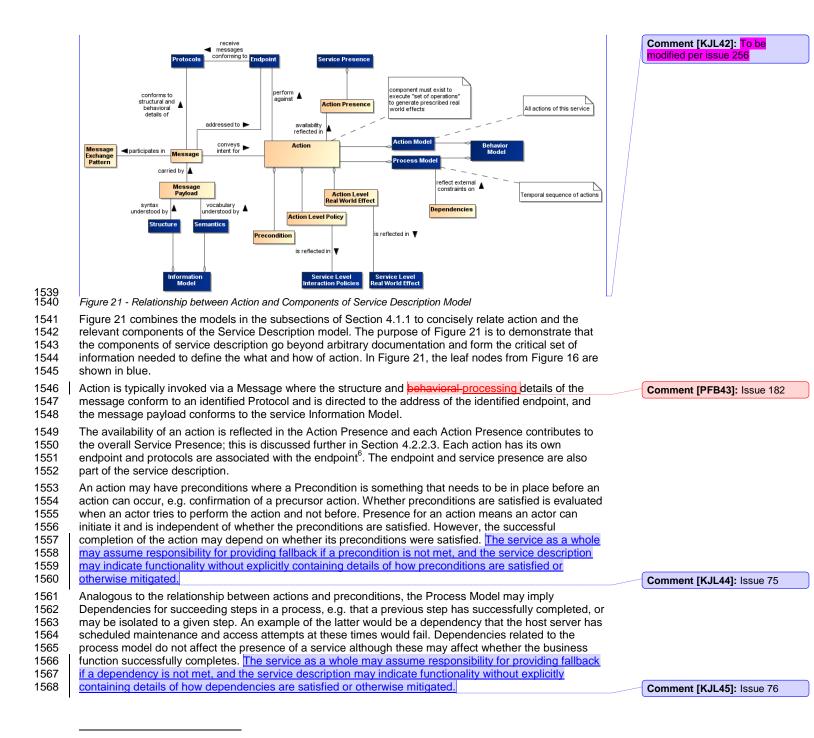
Comment [PFB41]: Issue 70

# 1531 4.1.2 Use of Service Description

# 1532 4.1.2.1 Service Description in support of Service Interaction

1533 If we assume we have awareness, the service participants must still establish willingness and presence to 1534 ensure full visibility (See Section 4.2) and to interact with the service. Service description provides

- necessary information for many aspects of preparing for and carrying through with interaction. Recall the
- 1536 fundamental definition of a SOA service is a mechanism to access an underlying capability; the service
- 1537 description describes this mechanism and its use. It lays the groundwork for what can occur, whereas
- 1538 service interaction comprises the specifics through which real-world effects are realized.



<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup> This is analogous to a WSDL 2.0 interface operation (WSDL 1.1 portType) having one or more defined bindings and the service identifies the endpoints (WSDL 1.1 ports) corresponding to the bindings.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 52 of 123 1569 The conditions under which an action can be invoked may depend on policies associated with the action. 1570 The Action Level Policies MUST be reflected in (or subsumed by) the Service Policies because such 1571 policies may be critical to determining whether the conditions for use of the service are consistent with the policies asserted by the service consumer. For example, if an action requires interaction with another 1572 service and that other service has licensing requirements, then the service with such an action also has 1573 the same requirement. The Service Policies are included in the service description. 1574 Comment [KJL46]: Issue 77 1575 Similarly, the result of invoking an action is one or more real world effects, and any Action Level Real 1576 World Effects MUST be reflected in the Service Level Real World Effect included in the service 1577 description. The unambiguous expression of action level policies and real world effects as service counterparts is necessary to adequately describe what constitutes the service interaction. For example, if 1578 an action allows for the tracking of user preferences, then the service with such an action results in the 1579 same real world effect. 1580 Comment [KJL47]: Similar to Issue 77 but never explicitly 1581 An adequate service description MUST provide a consumer with information needed to determine if the entered service policies, the (business) functions, and service-level real world effects are of interest, and there is 1582 1583 nothing in the technical constraints that preclude use of the service. 1584 Note at the service level, the business functions are not concerned with the action or process models. 1585 These models are detailed separately. The service description is not intended to be isolated documentation but rather an integral part of service 1586 use. Changes in service description SHOULD immediately be made known to consumers and potential 1587 1588 consumers. Comment [PFB48]: Invocation? 4.1.2.2 Description and Invoking Actions Against a Service 1589 1590 At this point, let us assume the descriptions were sufficient to establish willingness; see Section 4.2.2.2. 1591 Figure 21 indicates the service endpoint establishes where to actually carry out the interaction. This is 1592 where we start considering the action and process models. 1593 The action model identifies the multiple actions a user can perform against a service and the user would 1594 perform these in the context of the process model as specified or referenced under the Service Interface 1595 dDescription portion of Service Description. For a given business function, there is a corresponding Comment [PFB49]: Issue 183 process model, where any process model may involve multiple actions. From the above discussion of 1596 model elements of description we may conclude (1) actions have reachability information, including 1597 1598 endpoint and presence, (2) presence of service is some aggregation of presence of its actions, (3) action preconditions and service dependencies do not affect presence although these may affect successful 1599 1600 completion. 1601 Having established visibility, the interaction can proceed. Given a business function, the consumer knows 1602 what will be accomplished (the service functionality), the conditions under which interaction will proceed 1603 (service policies), and the process that must be followed (the process model). The remaining question is how the description information for structure and semantics enable interaction. 1604 1605 We have established the importance of the process model in identifying relevant actions and their 1606 sequence. Interaction proceeds through messages and thus it is the syntax and semantics of the messages with which we are here concerned. A common approach is to define the structure and 1607 1608 semantics that can appear as part of a message; then assemble the pieces into messages; and, associate messages with actions. Actions make use of structure and semantics as defined in the 1609 1610 information model to describe its legal messages. 1611 The process model identifies actions to be performed against a service and the sequence for performing 1612 the actions. For a given action, the Reachability portion of description indicates the protocol bindings that are available, the endpoint corresponding to a binding, and whether there is presence at that endpoint. An 1613 interaction is through the exchange of messages that conform to the structure and semantics defined in 1614 the information model and the message sequence conforming to the action's identified MEP. The result is 1615 some portion of the real world effect that must be assessed and/or processed (e.g. if an error exists, that 1616 1617 part that covers the error processing would be invoked).

### 1618 4.1.2.3 The Question of Multiple Business Functions

Action level effects and policies MUST be reflected at the service level for service description to supportvisibility.

1621 It is assumed that a SOA service represents an identifiable business function to which policies can be

applied and from which desired business effects can be obtained. While contemporary discussions of

1623 SOA services and supporting standards do not constrain what actions or combinations of actions can or 1624 should be defined for a service, the SOA-RAF considers the implications of service description in defining

1625 the range of actions appropriate for an individual SOA service.

1626 Consider the situation if a given SOA service is the mechanism for access to multiple independent (but 1627 loosely related) business functions. These are not multiple effects from a single function but multiple 1628 functions with potentially different sets of effects for each function. A service can have multiple actions a 1629 user may perform against it, and this does not change with multiple business functions. As an individual 1630 business function corresponds to a process model, so multiple business functions imply multiple process models. The same action may be used in multiple process models but the aggregated service presence 1631 1632 would be specific to each business function because the components being aggregated may be different 1633 between process models. In summary, for a service with multiple business functions, each function has 1634 (1) its own process model and dependencies, (2) its own aggregated presence, and (3) possibly its own 1635 list of policies and real world effects.

A common variation on this theme is for a single service to have multiple endpoints for different levels of quality of service (QoS), e.g. Gold, Silver, and Bronze. Different QoS imply separate statements of policy, separate endpoints, possibly separate dependencies, and so on. One could say the QoS variation does not require this because there can be a single QoS policy that encompasses the variations, and all other aspects of the service would be the same except for the endpoint used for each QoS. However, the different aspects of policy at the service level would need to be mapped to endpoints, and this introduces

- an undesirable level of coupling across the elements of description. In addition, it is obvious that
- description at the service level can become very complicated if the number of combinations is allowed to 1644 grow.

1645 One could imagine a service description that is basically a container for action descriptions, where each 1646 action description is self-contained; however, this would lead to duplication of description components 1647 across actions. If common description components are factored, this either is limited to components 1648 common across all actions or requires complicated tagging to capture the components that often but do 1649 not universally apply.

1650 If a provider cannot describe a service as a whole but must describe every action, this leads to the

as a provide a straight of the sector of the

Recall, more than one service can access the same underlying capability, and this is appropriate if a
different real world effect is to be exposed. Along these lines, one can argue that different QoS are
different services because getting a response in one minute rather than one hour is more than a QoS
difference; it is a fundamental difference in the business function being provided.

As a best practice, the criteria for whether a service is appropriately scoped may be the ease or difficulty in creating an unambiguous service description. A consequence of having tightly-scoped services is there will likely be a greater reliance on combining services, i.e. more fundamental business functions, to create more advanced business functions. This is consistent with the principles of service oriented architecture and is the basic position of this Reference Architecture Foundation, although not an absolute

requirement. Combining services increases the reliance on understanding and implementing the concepts of orchestration, choreography, and other approaches yet to be developed; these are discussed in more

1666 detail in section 4.4 Interacting with Services.

### 1667 4.1.2.4 Service Description, Execution Context, and Service Interaction

1668 The service description MUST provide sufficient information to support service visibility, including the 1669 willingness of service participants to interact. However, the corresponding descriptions for providers and

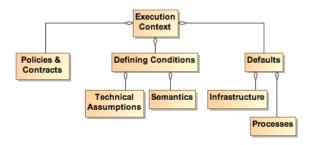
soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Working Draft 07 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

### Comment [KJL50]: Issue 257

11 May 2012

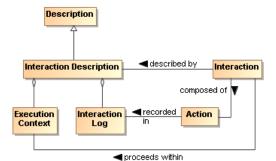
Page 54 of 123

- 1670 consumers may both contain policies, technical assumptions, constraints on semantics, and other
- technical and procedural conditions that must be aligned to define the terms of willingness. The
- agreements that encapsulate the necessary alignment form the basis upon which interactions may
- 1673 proceed in the Reference Model, this collection of agreements and the necessary environmental 1674 support establish the execution context.
- 1675 To illustrate the concept of the execution context of a service interaction, consider a Web-based system
- 1676 for timecard entry. For an employee onsite at an employer facility, the execution context requires a
- 1677 computer connected to the local network and the employee must enter their network ID and password.
- 1678 Relevant policies include that the employee must maintain the most recent anti-virus software and virus
- 1679 definitions for any computer connected to the network.
- 1680 For the same employee connecting from offsite, the execution context specifies the need for a computer
- 1681 with installed VPN software and a security token to negotiate the VPN connection. The execution context
- also includes proxy settings as needed to connect to the offsite network. The employee must still comply
   with the requirements for onsite computers and access, but the offsite execution context includes
- additional items before the employee can access the same underlying capability and realize the same
- 1685 real world effects, i.e. the timecard entries.



- 1687 Figure 22 Execution Context
- 1688 Figure 22 shows a few broad categories found in execution context. These are not meant to be
- 1689 comprehensive. Other items may need to be included to provide a sufficient description of the interaction 1690 conditions. Any other items not explicitly noted in the model but needed to set the environment SHOULD
- 1691 be included in the execution context.
- 1692 While the execution context captures the conditions under which interaction can occur, it does not capture 1693 the specific service invocations that do occur in a specific interaction. A service interaction as modeled in
- 1694 Figure 23 introduces the concept of an Interaction Description that is composed of both the Execution
- 1695 Context and an Interaction Log. The execution context specifies the set of conditions under which the
- 1696 interaction occurs and the interaction log captures the sequence of service interactions that occur within
- 1697 the execution context. This sequence should follow the Process Model but can include details beyond
- those specified there. For example, the Process Model may specify an action that results in identifying a data source, and the identified source is used in a subsequent action. The Interaction Log would record
- 1700 the specific data source used.
- 1701 The execution context can be thought of as a container in which the interaction occurs and the interaction
- 1702 log captures what happens inside the container. This combination is needed to support auditability and
- 1703 repeatability of the interactions.

Comment [PFB51]: Issue 185



1705 Figure 23 - Interaction Description

1706 SOA allows flexibility to accomplish both repeatability and reusability. In facilitating reusability, a service

1707 can be updated without disrupting the user experience of the service. So, Google can improve their

1708 ranking algorithm without notifying the user about the details of the update.

1709 However, it may also be vital for the consumer to be able to recreate past results or to generate

1710 consistent results in the future, and information such as what conditions, which services, and which

1711 versions of those services were used is indispensible in retracing one's path. The interaction log is a

1712 critical part of the resulting real world effects because it defines how the effects were generated and

possibly the meaning of observed effects. This increases in importance as dynamic composability
becomes more feasible. In essence, a result has limited value if one does not know how it was generated.

The becomes more reasoner. In essence, a result has influed value if one does not know now it was general

1715 The interaction log SHOULD be a detailed trace for a specific interaction, and its reuse is limited to 1716 duplicating that interaction. An execution context can act as a template for identical or similar interactions.

1717 Any given execution context MAY define the conditions of future interactions.

1718 Such uses of execution context imply (1) a standardized format for capturing execution context and (2) a

1719 subclass of general description could be defined to support visibility of saved execution contexts. The

1720 specifics of the relevant formats and descriptions are beyond the scope of this document.

1721 A service description is unlikely to track interaction descriptions or the constituent execution contexts or

1722 interaction logs that include mention of the service. However, as appropriate, linking to specific instances

1723 of either of these could be done through associated annotations.

# 1724 **4.1.3 Relationship to Other Description Models**

1725 While the representation shown in Figure 15 is derived from considerations related to service description,

it is acknowledged that other metadata standards are relevant and should, as possible, be incorporated
 into this work. Two standards of particular relevance are the Dublin Core Metadata Initiative (DCMI)

1728 **[DCMI]** and ISO 11179 **[ISO 11179]**, especially Part 5.

1729 When the service description (or even the general description class) is considered as the DCMI

1730 "resource", Figure 15 aligns nicely with the DCMI resource model. While some differences exist, these are

1731 mostly in areas where DCMI goes into detail that is considered beyond the scope of the current

1732 Reference Architecture Foundation. For example, DCMI defines classes of "shared semantics" whereas

this Reference Architecture Foundation considers that an identification of relevant semantic models is

sufficient. Likewise, the DCMI "description model" goes into the details of possible syntax encodings

1735 whereas for the Reference Architecture Framework it is sufficient to identify the relevant formats.

With respect to ISO 11179 Part 5, the metadata fields defined in that reference may be used without

1737 prejudice as the properties in Figure 15. Additionally, other defined metadata sets may be used by the 1738 service provider if the other sets are considered more appropriate, i.e. it is fundamental to this reference

1738 service provider if the other sets are considered more appropriate, i.e. it is fundamental to this reference 1739 architecture to identify the need and the means to make vocabulary declarations explicit but it is beyond

1739 architecture to identify the need and the means to make vocabulary declarations explicit but it is beyon 1740 the scope to specify which vocabularies are to be used. In addition, the identification of domain of the

- 1740 properties and range of the values has not been included in the current Reference Architecture
- discussion, but the text of ISO 11179 Part 5 can be used consistently with the model prescribed in this

1743 document.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Working Draft 07 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 56 of 123 1744 Description as defined here considers a wide range of applicability and support of the principles of service 1745 oriented architecture. Other metadata models can be used in concert with the model presented here 1746 because most of these focus on a finer level of detail that is outside the present scope, and so provide a

1747 level of implementation guidance that can be applied as appropriate.

# 1748 4.1.4 Architectural Implications

1749	The definition of service description indicates numerous architectural implications on the SOA ecosystem:
1750	<ul> <li>It changes over time and its contents will reflect changing needs and context. This requires the</li> </ul>
1751	existence of:
1752	<ul> <li>mechanisms to support the storage, referencing, and access to normative definitions of</li> </ul>
1753	one or more versioning schemes that may be applied to identify different aggregations of
1754	descriptive information, where the different schemes may be versions of a versioning
1755	scheme itself;
1756	<ul> <li>configuration management mechanisms to capture the contents of each aggregation and</li> </ul>
1757	apply a unique identifier in a manner consistent with an identified versioning scheme;
1758	<ul> <li>one or more mechanisms to support the storage, referencing, and access to conversion</li> </ul>
1759	relationships between versioning schemes, and the mechanisms to carry out such
1760	conversions.
1761	<ul> <li>Description makes use of defined semantics, where the semantics may be used for</li> </ul>
1762	categorization or providing other property and value information for description classes. This
1763	requires the existence of:
1764	<ul> <li>semantic models that provide normative descriptions of the utilized terms, where the</li> </ul>
1765	models may range from a simple dictionary of terms to an ontology showing complex
1766	relationships and capable of supporting enhanced reasoning;
1767	<ul> <li>mechanisms to support the storage, referencing, and access to these semantic models;</li> </ul>
1768	<ul> <li>configuration management mechanisms to capture the normative description of each</li> </ul>
1769	semantic model and to apply a unique identifier in a manner consistent with an identified
1770	versioning scheme;
1771	<ul> <li>one or more mechanisms to support the storage, referencing, and access to conversion</li> </ul>
1772	relationships between semantic models, and the mechanisms to carry out such
1773	conversions.
1774	<ul> <li>Descriptions include reference to policies defining conditions of use. In this sense, policies are</li> </ul>
1775	also resources that need to be visible, discoverable, and accessible. This requires the existence
1776	of (as also enumerated under governance):
1777	o description of policies, including a unique identifier for the policy and a sufficient, and
1778	preferably a machine processable, representation of the meaning of terms used to
1779	describe the policy, its functions, and its effects;
1780 1781	<ul> <li>one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for policies that best meet the search criteria enablished by the apprice participant, where the discovery mechanism has</li> </ul>
1782	search criteria specified by the service participant; where the discovery mechanism has access to the individual policy descriptions, possibly through some repository
1783	mechanism;
1784	<ul> <li>accessible storage of policies and policy descriptions, so service participants can access,</li> </ul>
1785	examine, and use the policies as defined.
1786	<ul> <li>Descriptions include references to metrics that describe the operational characteristics of the</li> </ul>
1787	<ul> <li>Descriptions include references to metrics that describe the operational characteristics of the subjects being described. This requires the existence of (as partially enumerated under</li> </ul>
1788	governance):
1789	<ul> <li>the infrastructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources;</li> </ul>
1790	<ul> <li>possible interface requirements to make accessible metrics information generated;</li> </ul>
1791	<ul> <li>mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of which metrics are available for a</li> </ul>
1792	described resources and information on how these metrics can be accessed;
1793	<ul> <li>mechanisms to catalog and enable discovery of compliance records associated with</li> </ul>
1794	policies and contracts that are based on these metrics.
1795	<ul> <li>Descriptions of the interactions are important for enabling auditability and repeatability, thereby</li> </ul>
1796	establishing a context for results and support for understanding observed change in performance
1797	or results. This requires the existence of:

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OAS

1798		o one or more mechanisms to capture, describe, store, discover, and retrieve interaction
1799		logs, execution contexts, and the combined interaction descriptions;
1800		<ul> <li>one or more mechanisms for attaching to any results the means to identify and retrieve</li> </ul>
1801		the interaction description under which the results were generated.
1802	•	Descriptions may capture very focused information subsets or can be an aggregate of numerous
1803		component descriptions. Service description is an example of an aggregate for which manual
1804		maintenance of the whole would not be feasible. This requires the existence of:
1805		<ul> <li>tools to facilitate identifying description elements that are to be aggregated to assemble</li> </ul>
1806		the composite description;
1807		<ul> <li>tools to facilitate identifying the sources of information to associate with the description</li> </ul>
1808		elements;
1809		<ul> <li>tools to collect the identified description elements and their associated sources into a</li> </ul>
1810		standard, referenceable format that can support general access and understanding;
1811		<ul> <li>tools to automatically update the composite description as the component sources</li> </ul>
1812		change, and to consistently apply versioning schemes to identify the new description
1813		contents and the type and significance of change that occurred.
1814	•	The description is the source of vital information in establishing willingness to interact with a
1815		resource, reachability to make interaction possible, and compliance with relevant conditions of
1816		use. This requires the existence of:
1817		<ul> <li>one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for described resources that</li> </ul>
1818		best meet the criteria specified by a service participant;
1819		<ul> <li>tools to appropriately track users of the descriptions and notify them when a new version</li> </ul>
1820		of the description is available.

# 1821 4.2 Service Visibility Model

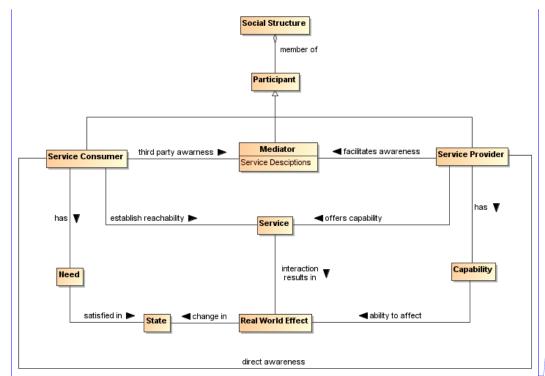
1822 One of the key requirements for participants interacting with each other in the context of a SOA ecosystem is achieving visibility: before services can interoperate, the participants have to be visible to each other using whatever means are appropriate. The Reference Model analyzes visibility in terms of awareness, willingness, and reachability. In this section, we explore how visibility may be achieved.

# 1826 4.2.1 Visibility to Business

1827 The relationship of visibility to the SOA ecosystem encompasses both human social structures and automated IT mechanisms. Figure 24 depicts a business setting that is a basis for visibility as related to 1828 1829 the Social Structure Model (Figure 3) in the Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view (see Section 3.1). The 1830 participants acting in the various roles of service consumers, mediators, and service providers may have 1831 direct awareness or mediated awareness where mediated awareness is achieved through some third party. A consumer's willingness to use a service is reflected by the consumer's presumption of satisfying 1832 goals and needs as these compare with information provided in the service description. Service providers 1833 1834 offer capabilities that have real world effects that result in a change in state. Reachability of the service by 1835 the consumer may lead to interactions that change the state of the SOA ecosystem. The consumer can 1836 measure the change of state to determine if the claims made by description and the real world effects of 1837 consuming the service meet the consumer's needs. 1838

Comment [PFB52]: Issue 294 – wording available in issue sheet

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product



### Comment [KJL53]: To be modified per Issue 85 and possibly Issue 294

Resolve 294 by removing Social Structure and Participant from model

### 1840 1841

1863

Figure 24 - Visibility to Business

Visibility and interoperability in a SOA ecosystem requires more than location and interface information. A
 meta-model for this broader view of visibility is depicted in Section 4.1. In addition to providing improved
 awareness of service capabilities through description of information such as reachability, behavior
 models, information models, functionality, and metrics, the service description may identify policies

1846 valuable for determination of willingness to interact.

1847 A mediator using service descriptions may provide event notifications to both consumers and providers about information relating to the descriptions. One example of this capability is a publish/subscribe model

where the mediator allows consumers to subscribe to service description version changes made by the

1850 provider. Likewise, the mediator may provide notifications to the provider of consumers that have

1851 subscribed to service description updates.

1852 Another important capability in a SOA ecosystem is the ability to narrow visibility to trusted members

- 1853 within a social structure. Mediators for awareness may provide policy based access to service
- 1854 descriptions allowing for the dynamic formation of awareness between trusted members.

# 1855 4.2.2 Visibility

1856 Attaining visibility is described in terms of steps that lead to visibility. Different participant communities can bring different contexts for visibility within a single social structure, and the same general steps can be

- 1858 applied to each of the contexts to accomplish visibility.
- 1859 Attaining SOA visibility requires
- 1860 service description creation and maintenance,
- 1861 processes and mechanisms for achieving awareness of and accessing descriptions,
- 1862 processes and mechanisms for establishing willingness of participants,
  - processes and mechanisms to determine reachability.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	
Standards Track Work Product	

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 59 of 123 1864 Visibility may occur in stages, i.e. a participant can become aware enough to look or ask for further 1865 description, and with this description, the participant can decide on willingness, possibly requiring additional description. For example, if a potential consumer has a need for a tree cutting (business) 1866 service, the consumer can use a web search engine to find web sites of providers. The web search 1867 engine (a mediator) gives the consumer links to relevant web pages and the consumer can access those 1868 descriptions. For those prospective providers that satisfy the consumer's criteria, the consumer's 1869 willingness to interact increases. The consumer may contact several tree services to get detailed cost 1870 1871 information (or arrange for an estimate) and may ask for references (further description). The consumer is likely to establish full visibility and proceed with interaction with the tree service that mutually establishes 1872 1873 visibility.

#### 1874 4.2.2.1 Awareness

1875 An important means for a service participant to be aware of another participant is to have access to a description of that participant and for the description to have sufficient completeness to establish the other 1876 requirements of visibility. 1877

1878 Awareness is inherently a function of a participant; awareness can be established without any action on

1879 the part of the target participant other than the target providing appropriate descriptions. Awareness is 1880 often discussed in terms of consumer awareness of providers but the concepts are equally valid for

1881 provider awareness of consumers.

1882 Awareness can be decomposed into: creating the descriptions, making them available, and discovering the descriptions. Discovery can be initiated or it can be by notification. Initiated discovery for business 1883 1884 may require formalization of the required capabilities and resources to achieve business goals.

1885 Achieving awareness in a SOA can range from word of mouth to formal service descriptions in a

1886 standards-based registry-repository. Some other examples of achieving awareness in a SOA are the use 1887 of a web page containing description information, email notifications of descriptions, and document based 1888 descriptions.

1889 A mediator for awareness is a third party participant whose use provides awareness to one or more 1890 consumers of one or more services. Direct awareness is awareness between a consumer and provider 1891 without the use of a third party. The use of a registry/repository can provide awareness as can a Web

1892 page displaying similar information.

1893 Direct awareness may be the result of having previously established an execution context, or direct

1894 awareness may include determining the presence of services and then querying the service directly for description. As an example, a priori visibility of some sensor device may provide the means for interaction 1895

1896 or a query for standardized sensor device metadata may be broadcast to multiple locations. If

acknowledged, the service interface for the device may directly provide description to a consumer so the 1897 1898 consumer can determine willingness to interact.

1899 The same medium for awareness may be direct in one context and may be mediated in another context. 1900 For example, a service provider may maintain a web site with links to the provider's descriptions of

services giving the consumers direct awareness to the provider's services. Alternatively, a community 1901

may maintain a mediated web site with a search interface that makes use of an index of these (and 1902

possibly other) links to various provider descriptions of services, for and the web site could be used by 1903 any number of consumers. More than one mediator approach to mediation may be involved, as different 1904

mediators sources of description may specialize in different mediation functions whose use provides 1905 mediation. 1906 1907 Descriptions may be formal or informal. Section 4.1, provides a comprehensive model for service

1908 description that can be used to mediate visibility. Using consistent description taxonomies and standards 1909 based mediated awareness helps provide more effective awareness.

#### 1910 4.2.2.1.1 Mediated Awareness

Mediated awareness promotes simplification of the overall services infrastructure loose coupling by 1911

1912 keeping the consumers and services from explicitly referring to each other. Mediation lets inter independently. Rather than all potential service consumers being informed on a continual basis about all

1913

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

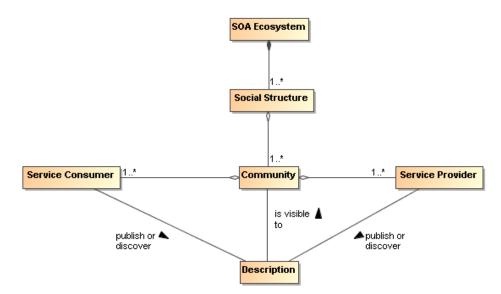
11 May 2012 Page 60 of 123

Comment [KJL54]: Issue 187, 188

Comment [PFB55]: Issue 189

# services, there is a known or agreed upon facility or location that stores and supports discovery and/or notification related to the service description. 1915

	1	•		ı.	
	Potential Service Consumer	Mediator E	publish description     Service Provider	/	Comment [PFB56]: "Mediator" needs to be replaced with "Mediated Awareness" as component label Issue 190
	Potential Service Consumer	Service Description	publish description     Service Provider		
		Service Description	publish description     Service Provider		
		Service Description	publish description     Service Provider		
1916 1917	Figure 25 - Mediated <mark>Service</mark> Awa	reness			Comment [PFB57]: Issue 190
1918 1919 1920 1921	services that satisfy their needs individuals perform manual sea	ice consumers perform queries or are r s. As an example, the telephone book i arches to locate services (i.e. the yellow icitors to find and notify potential custor	s a mediating registry where v pages). The telephone book is		
1922 1923   1924	providers, the benefits of utilizin	s for large and dynamic numbers of ser ng the awareness mediator typically far benefits of mediated service awarenes	routweigh the management issues		Comment [PFB58]: Issue 192
1925 1926 1927 1928 1929 1929	<ul> <li>and random searches</li> <li>Typically a consortium the mediation facility</li> </ul>	umers have a known location for search of interested parties (or a sufficiently la d methods can be developed and prom	arge corporation) signs up to host		
1931	However, mediated awareness	can have some risks associated with i	it:		
1932 1933 1934 1935	<ul><li>service providers and o</li><li>A single point of control</li></ul>	<ul> <li>If the <u>awareness mediatormediation s</u> consumers are potentially adversely aff ol. If the <u>central mediation service awar</u> e other than the service consumers and</li> </ul>	ected. eness mediator is owned by, or		Comment [PFB59]: Issue 193 Comment [PFB60]: Issue 194
1936	put at a competitive dis	advantage based on policies of the dis	scovery provider.		
1937 1938 1939 1940	pointers to service description a	diated awareness is a registry/repositor artifacts. The repository in this example ervice descriptions can be pushed (pub diator.	is the storage location for the		
1941 1942	<b>o</b> 1 ,	referred to as federated when supported ted across multiple registry/repository			
1943	4.2.2.1.2 Awareness in Co	mplex Social Structures			
1944 1945 1946		ore communities within one or more so tion provider and one description cons re or be part of different ones.			
1947 1948	communities, or all communitie	e between consumers and providers w is in the social structure. The Within a s	social structure <u>, awareness</u> can <u>be</u>		
1949 1950 1951	willingness. The information ab structure also governs the cond	onese through its policies, and these po out policies should be incorporated in t ditions for establishing contracts, the re	the relevant descriptions. The social solutions of which are reflected in the		Comment [PFB61]: Issue 195
1952 1953	execution context if interaction governed within a social structu	is to proceed Additionally, the condition	ns for establishing contracts are		
1900		I			Comment [PFB62]: Issue 196
	soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product	Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Res	11 May 2012 erved. Page 61 of 123		



### 1955 Figure 26 - Awareness in a SOA Ecosystem

1956 IT policy/contract mechanisms can be used by visibility mechanisms to provide awareness between

1957 communities. The IT mechanisms for awareness may incorporate trust mechanisms to enable awareness

between trusted communities. For example, government organizations may want to limit awareness of an
 organization's services to specific communities of interest.

1960 Another common business model for awareness is maximizing awareness to communities within the 1961 social structure, the traditional market place business model. A centralized awareness-mediator often 1962 arises as a provider for this global visibility, a gatekeeper of visibility so to speak. For example, Google is a centralized awareness-mediator for accessing information on the web. As another example, television 1964 networks have centralized entities providing a level of awareness to communities that otherwise could not be achieved without going through the television network.

1966 However, mediators have motivations, and they may be selective in which information they choose to 1967 make available to potential consumers. For example, in a secure environment, the mediator may enforce

1967 make available to potential consumers. For example, in a secure environment, the mediator may enforce 1968 security policies and make information selectively available depending on the security clearance of the 1969 consumers.

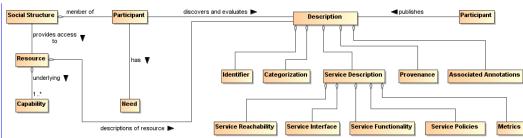
toos consumers.

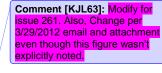
# 1970 **4.2.2.2 Willingness**

1971 Having achieved awareness, participants use descriptions to help determine their willingness to interact

1972 with another participant. Both awareness and willingness are determined prior to consumer/provider

- 1973 interaction.
- 1974
- 1975





Comment [KJL64]: Issue 262

(part)

Page 63 of 123

1977 1978 Figure 27 - Business, Description and Willingness

1979 Figure 27 relates elements of the Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view, and elements from the Service 1980 Description Model to willingness. By having a willingness to interact within a particular social structure, the social structure provides the participant access to capabilities based on conditions the social structure 1981 1982 finds appropriate for its context. The participant can use these capabilities to satisfy goals and objectives 1983 as specified by the participant's needs.

1984 In Figure 27, information used to determine willingness is defined by Description. Information referenced by Description may come from many sources. For example, a mediator for descriptions may provide 3rd 1985 party annotations for reputation. Another source for reputation may be a participant's own history of 1986 interactions with another participant. The contribution of real world effects to providing evidence and 1987 1988 establishing the reputation of a participant is discussed with relation to Figure 9.

1989 A participant inspects functionality for potential satisfaction of needs. Identity is associated with any 1990 participant, however, identity may or may not be verified. If available, participant reputation may be a 1991 deciding factor for willingness to interact. Policies and contracts referenced by the description may be

- particularly important to determine the agreements and commitments required for business interactions. 1992 1993
- Provenance may be used for verification of authenticity of a resource.

1994 Mechanisms that aid in determining willingness make use of the artifacts referenced by descriptions of

1995 services. Mechanisms for establishing willingness could be as simple as rendering service description 1996 information for human consumption to automated evaluation of functionality, policies, and contracts by a

rules engine. The rules engine for determining willingness could operate as a policy decision procedure 1997

1998 as defined in Section 4.4.

#### 4.2.2.3 Reachability 1999

2003 2004

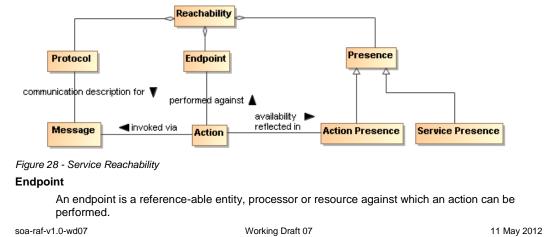
2005

2006

2007

2000 Reachability involves knowing the endpoint, protocol, and presence of a service. At a minimum,

2001 reachability requires information about the location of the service and the protocol describing the means 2002 of communication.



Working Draft 07 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

1976

### 2008 Protocol

- 2009 A protocol is a structured means by which details of a service interaction mechanism are defined.
- 2010 Presence

2011

Presence is the measurement of reachability of a service at a particular point in time.

A protocol defines a structured method of communication. Presence is determined by interaction through a communication protocol. Presence may not be known in many cases until the interaction begins. To

2014 overcome this problem, IT mechanisms may make use of presence protocols to provide the current

2015 up/down status of a service.

Service reachability enables service participants to locate and interact with one another. Each action may have its own endpoint and also its own protocols associated with the endpoint and whether there is presence for the action through that endpoint. Presence of a service is an aggregation of the presence of the service's actions, and the service level may aggregate to some degraded or restricted presence if some action presence is not confirmed. For example, if error processing actions are not available, the service can still provide required functionality if no error processing is needed. This implies reachability relates to each action as well as applying to the service/business as a whole.

# 2023 4.2.3 Architectural Implications

2020	
2024 2025	Visibility in a SOA ecosystem has the following architectural implications on mechanisms providing support for awareness, willingness, and reachability:
2026 2027 2028 2029 2030 2031	<ul> <li>Mechanisms providing support for awareness have the following minimum capabilities:         <ul> <li>creation of Description, preferably conforming to a standard Description format and structure;</li> <li>publishing of Description directly to a consumer or through a third party mediator;</li> <li>discovery of Description, preferably conforming to a standard for Description discovery;</li> <li>notification of Description updates or notification of the addition of new and relevant</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
2032	Descriptions;
2033	<ul> <li>classification of Description elements according to standardized classification schemes.</li> </ul>
2034 2035	In a SOA ecosystem with complex social structures, awareness may be provided for specific
2035	communities of interest. The architectural mechanisms for providing awareness to communities of interest require support for:
2030	<ul> <li>policies that allow dynamic formation of communities of interest;</li> </ul>
2037	<ul> <li>trust that awareness can be provided for and only for specific communities of interest, the</li> </ul>
2030	bases of which is typically built on encryption technologies.
2040	The architectural mechanisms for determining willingness to interact require support for:
2041	<ul> <li>verification of identity and credentials of the provider and/or consumer;</li> </ul>
2042	<ul> <li>access to and understanding of description;</li> </ul>
2043	<ul> <li>inspection of functionality and capabilities;</li> </ul>
2044	<ul> <li>inspection of policies and/or contracts.</li> </ul>
2045	<ul> <li>The architectural mechanisms for establishing reachability require support for:</li> </ul>
2046	<ul> <li>the location or address of an endpoint;</li> </ul>
2047	<ul> <li>verification and use of a service interface by means of a communication protocol;</li> </ul>
2048	<ul> <li>determination of presence with an endpoint which may only be determined at the point of</li> </ul>
2049	interaction but may be further aided by the use of a presence protocol for which the
2050	endpoints actively participate.

# 2051 4.3 Interacting with Services Model

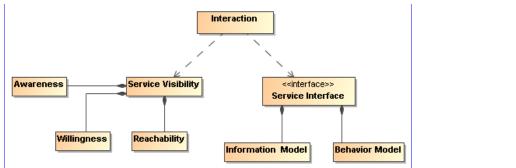
Interaction is the activity involved in using a service to access capability in order to achieve a particular
 desired real world effect, where real world effect is the actual result of using a service. An interaction can
 be characterized by a sequence of communicative actions. Consequently, interacting with a service, i.e.
 participating in joint action with the service—usually accomplished mediated by a series of message

Comment [KJL65]: Issue 202

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 64 of 123 exchanges—involves individual actions performed by both the service and the consumer.<sup>7</sup> Note that a
 participant (or delegate acting on behalf of the participant) can be the sender of a message, the receiver
 of a message, or both.

## 2059 4.3.1 Interaction Dependencies

2060 Recall from the Reference Model that service visibility is the capacity for those with needs and those with capabilities to be able to interact with each other, and that the service interface is the means by which the 2061 2062 underlying capabilities of a service are accessed. Ideally, the details of the underlying service 2063 implementation are abstracted away by the service interface. [Service] interaction therefore has a direct dependency on the visibility of the service as well as its implementation-neutral interface (see Figure 29). 2064 2065 Service visibility is composed of awareness, willingness, and reachability, and these are discussed in Section 4.2. The information related to the service interface description is discussed in Section 4.1.1.3.1, 2066 and the specifics of interaction are detailed in the remainder of Section 4.3. Service visibility is modeled in 2067 2068 Section 4.2.2.



Comment [KJL66]: Comment 203 Comment [KJL67]: Change per 3/29/2012 email and attachment

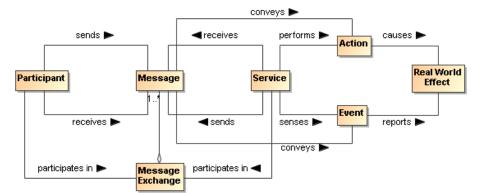
2069

2070 Figure 29 - Interaction dependencies

### 2071 **4.3.2 Actions and Events**

- 2072 The SOA-RAF uses message exchange between service participants to denote actions performed
- 2073 against and by the service, and to denote events that report on real world effects that are caused by the
- 2074 service actions. A visual model of the relationship between these concepts is shown in Figure 30.

<sup>7</sup> In order for multiple actors to participate in a joint action, they must each act according to their role within the joint action. For SOA-based systems, this is achieved through a message exchange style of communication. The concept of "joint action" is further described in Section 3.3.2.



2076 Figure 30 - A "message" denotes either an action or an event

2077 Both actions and events, realized by the SOA services, are denoted by the messages. The Reference

2078 Model states that the action model characterizes the "permissible set of actions that may be invoked

2079 against a service." We extend that notion here to include events as part of the event model and that

2080 messages are intended for invoking actions or for notification of events.

In Section 3.3.2 we saw that participants interact with each other in order to participate in joint actions. A joint action is not itself the same thing as the result of the joint action. When a joint action is participated in

2083 with a service, the real world effect that results may be reported in the form of an event notification.

# 2084 4.3.3 Message Exchange

2085 *Message exchange* is the means by which service participants (or their delegates) interact with each 2086 other. There are two primary modes of interaction: joint actions that cause real world effects and 2087 notification of events that report real world effects<sup>8</sup>.

A message exchange is used to affect an action when the messages contain the appropriately formatted content, are directed towards a particular action in accordance with the action model, and the delegates involved interpret the message appropriately.

A message exchange is also used to communicate event notifications. An event is an occurrence that is of interest to some participant; in our case when some real world effect has occurred. Just as action

2093 messages have formatting requirements, so do event notification messages. In this way, the Information

2094 Model of a service must specify the syntax (structure), and semantics (meaning) of the action messages

and event notification messages as part of a service interface. It must also specify the syntax and

semantics of any data that is carried as part of a payload of the action or event notification message. The Information Model is described in greater detail in the Service Description Model (see Section 4.1).

2098 In addition to the Information Model that describes the syntax and semantics of the messages and data 2099 payloads, exception conditions and error handling in the event of faults (e.g., network outages, improper 2100 message formats, etc.) must be specified or referenced as part of the Service Description.

2101 When a message is used to invoke an action, the correct interpretation typically requires the receiver to 2102 perform an operation, which itself invokes a set of private, internal actions. These *operations* represent

the sequence of (private) actions a service must perform in order to validly participate in a given jointaction.

2105 Similarly, the correct consequence of realizing a real world effect may be to initiate the reporting of that 2106 real world effect via an event notification.

<sup>8</sup> The notion of "joint" in joint action implies that you have to have a speaker and a listener in order to interact.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 66 of 123 Comment [PFB68]: Issue 292

### 2107 Message Exchange

2108The means by which joint action and event notifications are coordinated by service participants2109(or delegates).

### 2110 Operations

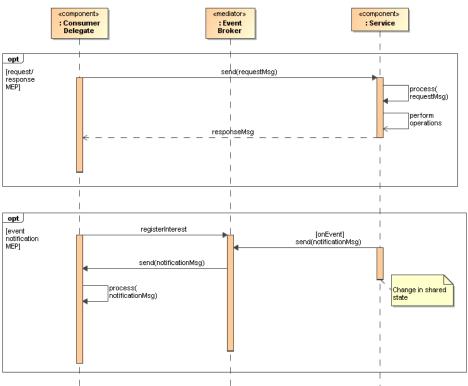
2116

2117

2111 The sequence of actions a service must perform in order to validly participate in a given joint 2112 action.

# 2113 4.3.3.1 Message Exchange Patterns (MEPs)

- 2114 The basic temporal aspect of service interaction can be characterized by two fundamental message 2115 exchange patterns (MEPs):
  - Request/response to represent how actions cause a real world effect
  - Event notification to represent how events report a real world effect
- 2118 This is by no means a complete list of all possible MEPs used for inter- or intra-enterprise messaging but
- 2119 it does represent those that are most commonly used in exchange of information and reporting changes
- 2120 in state both within organizations and across organizational boundaries.



2121

- 2122 Figure 31 Fundamental SOA message exchange patterns (MEPs)
- 2123 Recall from the Reference Model that the Process Model characterizes "the temporal relationships
- between and temporal properties of actions and events associated with interacting with the service."
- 2125 Thus, MEPs are a key element of the Process Model. The meta-level aspects of the Process Model (just
- as with the Action Model) are provided as part of the Service Description Model (see Section 4.1).
- 2127 In the UML sequence diagram shown in Figure 31 it is assumed that the service participants (consumer
- and provider) have delegated message handling to hardware or software delegates acting on their behalf. In the case of the service consumer, this is represented by the *Consumer Delegate* component. In the

	-	•		0	•	
soa-raf-v1.0-wd07		Working D	raft 07			11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © C	DASIS Open 20	11. All Rights R	eserved.		Page 67 of 123

2130 case of the service provider, the delegate is represented by the Service component. The message 2131 interchange model illustrated represents a logical view of the MEPs and not a physical view. In other 2132 words, specific hosts, network protocols, and underlying messaging system are not shown, as these tend to be implementation specific. Although such implementation-specific elements are considered outside 2133 the scope of this document, they are important considerations in modeling the SOA execution context. 2134 Recall from the Reference Model that the execution context of a service interaction is "the set of 2135 infrastructure elements, process entities, policy assertions and agreements that are identified as part of 2136 2137 an instantiated service interaction, and thus forms a path between those with needs and those with 2138 capabilities."

# 2139 4.3.3.2 Request/Response MEP

2140 In a request/response MEP, the Consumer Delegate component sends a request message to the Service 2141 component. The Service component then processes the request message. Based on the content of the

message, the Service component performs the service operation and the associated private actions.
 Following the completion of these operations, a response message is returned to the Consumer Delegate

2144 component. The response could be that a step in a process is complete, the initiation of a follow-on 2145 operation, or the return of requested information.<sup>9</sup>

21.10 Operation, or the converse discrementation and the conversion of the converse the converse

Although the sequence diagram shows a *synchronous* interaction (because the sender of the request message, i.e., Consumer Delegate, is blocked from continued processing until a response is returned

message, i.e., Consumer Delegate, is blocked from continued processing until a response is returned
 from the Service) other variations of request/response are valid, including *asynchronous* (non-blocking)
 interaction through use of queues, channels, or other messaging techniques.

2150 What is important to convey here is that the request/response MEP represents action, which causes a

real world effect, irrespective of the underlying messaging techniques and messaging infrastructure used

2152 to implement the request/response MEP.

# 2153 4.3.3.3 Event Notification MEP

2154 An event is made visible to interested consumers by means of an event notification message exchange

- that reports a real world effect; specifically, a change in shared state between service participants. The
- basic event notification MEP takes the form of a one-way message sent by a notifier component (in this case, the Service component) and received by components with an interest in the event (here, the
- 2158 Consumer Delegate component).

Often the sending component may not be fully aware of all the components that wish to receive the notification; particularly in so-called publish/subscribe ("pub/sub") situations. In event notification message exchanges, it is rare to have a tightly-coupled link between the sending and the receiving component(s) for a number of practical reasons. One of the most common needs for pub/sub messaging is the potential for network outages or communication interrupts that can result in loss of notification of events. Therefore, a third-party mediator component is often used to decouple the sending and receiving components.

2165 Although this is typically an implementation issue, because this type of third-party decoupling is so

2165 common in event-driven systems, it is warranted for use in modeling this type of message exchange in 2167 the SOA-RAF. This third-party intermediary is shown in Figure 31 as an Event Broker mediator. As with

2168 the request/response MEP, no distinction is made between synchronous versus asynchronous

communication, although asynchronous message exchange is illustrated in the UML sequence diagram

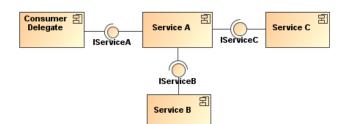
2170 depicted in Figure 31.

# 2171 4.3.4 Composition of Services

2172 Composition of services is the act of aggregating or "composing" a single service from one or more other 2173 services. A simple model of service composition is illustrated in Figure 32.

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> There are cases when a response is not always desired and this would be an example of a "one-way" MEP. Similarly, while not shown here, there are cases when some type of "callback" MEP is required in which the consumer agent is actually exposed as a service itself and is able to process incoming messages from another service.

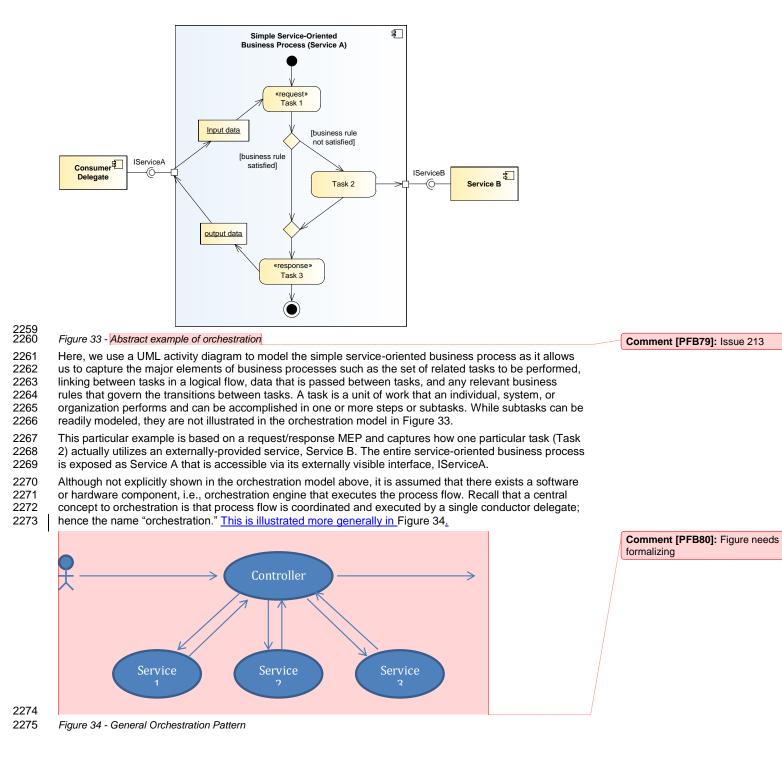


2174 2175 Figure 32 - Simple model of service composition

2175	Figure 32 - Simple model of service composition	
2176 2177 2178 2179 2180 2181 2182 2182 2183	Here, Service A is a service that has an exposed interface IServiceA, which is available to the Consumer Delegate and relies on two other services in its implementation. The Consumer Delegate does not know that Services B and C are used by Service A, or whether they are used in serial or parallel, or if their operations succeed or fail. The Consumer Delegate only cares about the success or failure of Service A. The exposed interfaces of Services B and C (IService B and IServiceC) are not necessarily hidden from the Consumer Delegate; only the fact that these services are used as part of the composition of Service A. In this example, there is no practical reason the Consumer Delegate could not interact with Service B or Service C in some other interaction scenario.	
2184 2185 2186 2187 2188	While the service composition is opaque from the Consumer Delegate's perspective, it is transparent to the service owner. This transparency is necessary for service management It is possible for a service composition to be opaque from one perspective and transparent from another. For example, a service may appear to be a single service from the Consumer's Delegate's perspective, but is transparently composed of one or more services from a service management perspective. A Service Management capability needs to be able to have visibility into the composition in order to properly manage the	
2189   2190 2191 2192 2193 2194	dependencies between the services used in constructing the composition in order to properly manage the service's lifecycle. The subject of services as management entities is described and modeled in the <i>Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem</i> View of the SOA-RAF and is not further elaborated in this section. The point to be made here is that there can be different levels of opaqueness or transparency when it comes to visibility of service composition.	Comment [KJL69]: Issue 93
2195 2196 2197 2198 2199	Services can be composed in a variety of ways, including direct consumer-to-service interaction, by using programming techniques, or using an intermediary, such as an orchestration engine leveraging higher level orchestration languages, they can be aggregated by means of an aggregation engine approach that leverages a service composition scripting language. Such approaches are further elaborated in the following sub-sections on service-oriented business processes and collaborations.	Comment [KJL70]: Issue 94, 204
2200	4.3.5 Service Composition of Business Processes and Collaborations	
2201   2202 2203 2204	The concepts of business processes and collaborations in the context of transactions and exchanges across organizational boundaries are described and modeled as part of the <i>Participation in a SOA Ecosystem</i> view of this reference architecture (see Section 3). Here, we focus on the belief that the principles involved in the of composition of services (including but not limited to loose coupling, selective)	
2205 2206 2207 2208 2209	transparency and opacity, dynamic interactions) can be applied to business processes and collaborations. Of course, business processes and collaborations traditionally represent complex, multi- step business functions that may involve multiple participants, including internal users, external customers, and trading partners. Therefore, such complexities cannot simply be ignored when transforming traditional business processes and collaborations to their service-oriented variants.	Comment [KJL71]: Issue 264
2210	Business Process	
2211 2212	A set of one or more linkedsteps (activities) that are performed in accordance with predefined logic in order to achieve a required to achieve a cortain business outcome.	Comment [PFB72]: Issue 206
2213	Business Collaboration	
2214 2215	A set of interactions among business participants where each participant agrees to perform activities that in aggregate will produce a required business outcome.	

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 69 of 123

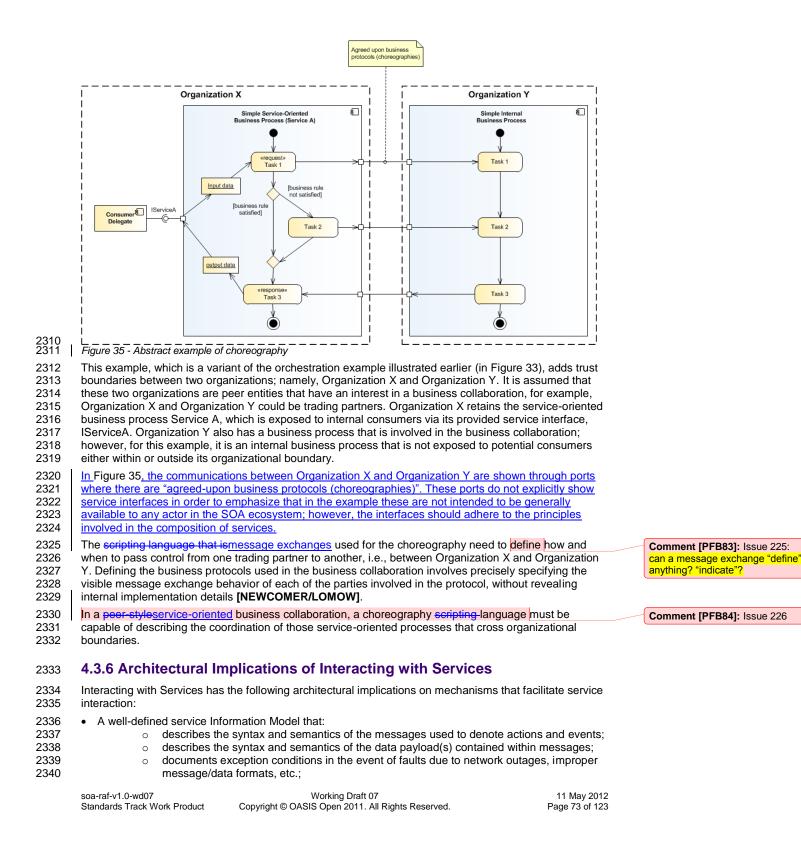
2216 2217	Realizing the required business outcomes often involve a combination of business processes and business collaborations. Collaborations may be among actors executing formal business practices;	
2218	business processes may call upon other actors who accomplish their activities through collaborative	
2219	efforts. The techniques discussed in the following can be applied to any combination of services that	
2220	instantiate service-oriented business processes or are used as part of service-oriented business	
2221	collaborations.	
2222	4.3.5.1 Service-Oriented Business Processes	
2223	Service orientation as applied to business processes (i.e., "service-oriented business processes")	
2224	includes both (1) abstracting as services the participating activities and rules governing business	
2225	processes and (2) using the resulting service to realize the effects of the abstracted processmeans that	
2226	the aggregation or composition of all of the abstracted activities, flows, and rules that govern a business	
2227	process can themselves be abstracted as a service [BLOOMBERG/SCHMELZER].	Comment [PFB73]: Issue 208
2228 2229	When business processes are implemented asabstracted in this manner and accessed through SOA services, all of the concepts used to describe and model composition of services that were articulated in	Comment [KJL74]: Issues 95, 209
2230	Section 4.3.4 apply. However, there are some important differences between a composite service that	
2231	represents an abstraction of a business process and a composite service that represents a single-step	<b>Comment [kjl75]:</b> Statement relevant with or without service
2232	business interaction. Business processes have temporal properties and can range from short-lived	being a composite.
2233	processes that execute on the order of minutes or hours to long-lived processes that can execute for	
2234	weeks, months, or even years. Further, these processes may involve many participants- These and are	
2235	may be important considerations for the consumer of a service-oriented business process. and For	
2236	example, a consumer may need to know details of the business process in order to have confidence in	
2237	the resulting real world effects. In such cases, these temporal properties along with the meta-level	
2238 2239	aspects of any sub-processes must-may need to be articulated as part of the meta-level aspects of the service-oriented business process in its Service Description, along with the meta-level aspects of any	
2239	sub-processes that may be of use or need to be visible to the service consumer.	Comment IDED701, Jacua 205
		Comment [PFB76]: Issue 265
2241	In addition, a workflow activity represents a unit of work that some actor acting in a described role (i.e., role player) is asked to perform. Activities can be broken down into steps with each step representing a	
2242 2243	task for the role player to perform. Activities can be broken down into steps with each step representing a task for the role player to perform. A technique that is used to compose service-oriented business	
2243	processes that are hierarchical (top-down) and self-contained in nature is known as orchestration.	Comment [PFB77]: Issue 210
2245	Orchestration	
-		
2246 2247	A technique used to compose service-oriented business processes that are executed and coordinated by an actor acting as "conductor."	
2248	In orchestration, the conductor organizes, controls, and is accountable for the final expected outcome.	
2249	Among the many ways of implementing business processes, a prevalent implementation is using the	
2250	orchestration engine and orchestration language (domain-specific language designed specifically to	
2251	simplify programming). An orchestration is typically implemented using a scripting approach to compose	
2252	service-oriented business processes. This typically involves use of a standards-based orchestration	
2253	scripting language. In terms of automation, an orchestration can be mechanized using a business process orchestration engine, which is a hardware or software component (delegate) responsible for	
2254 2255	process orchestration engine, which is a hardware or software component (delegate) responsible for acting in the role of central conductor/coordinator responsible for executing the flows that comprise the	
2255 2256	acting in the role of central conductor/coordinator responsible for executing the nows that comprise the	Comment [KJL78]: Issues 96 &
	or of the state of	216 plus agreed rewrite
2257 2258	A simple generic example of such an orchestration is illustrated in Figure 33. <u>Here, Service A is the</u> orchestrating service that controls interaction with the orchestrated service, Service B.	



soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 71 of 123

2276 2277 2278 2279 2280 2281	4.3.5.1 <u>4.3.5.2</u> Service-Oriented Business Collaborations Whereas orchestration requires a central controller to execute a predefined business process, service composition can also be accomplished as a simultaneous cooperation between actors without the presence of a central control. For such a collaboration, the actors, often considered to be acting as peers, proceed according to prior agreements for information flow and actions. Business collaborations typically represent the interaction involved in executing business transactions.	
2282 2283 2284 2285 2286	It is important to note that business collaborations represent "peer"-style interactions; in other words, peers in a business collaboration act as equals. This means that unlike the orchestration of business processes, there is no single or central entity that coordinates or "conducts" a business collaboration. These peer styles of interactions typically occur between trading partners that span organizational boundaries.	Comment [kjl81]:
2287 2288 2289 2290	Business collaborations can also be service-enabled. For purposes of this Reference Architecture Foundation, we refer to these-such interactions as "service-oriented business collaborations." Service- oriented business collaborations do not necessarily imply exposing the entire peer-style business collaboration as a service itself but rather the collaboration uses service-based interchanges.	Agreed to replace current wording in lines 2185-90 with the essence of proposal from Boris (col. L) but need to incorporate wording that
2291 2292 2293 2294	The technique that is used to compose service-oriented business collaborations in which multiple parties collaborate in a peer-style as part of some larger business transaction by exchanging messages with trading partners and external organizations (e.g., suppliers) is known as choreography [NECOMER/LOMOW].	conveys sense of business collaboration being 'simultaneous cooperation between actors that do not require any centralized orchestration'.
2295 2296 2297 2298	Choreography A technique used to <u>engage independent business services into collaborative efforts in order to</u> <u>achieve a common business outcome based on collective agreements between participants and</u> <u>with no one in charge over the entire collaboration</u>	
2299 2300 2301 2302 2303 2304 2305 2306 2307	For choreography, multiple parties collaborate in a peer-style communication as part of some larger business transaction by exchanging messages with trading partners and external organizations (e.g., suppliers). <b>[NEWCOMER/LOMOW]</b> Choreography-It differs from orchestration primarily in that each party in a business collaboration describes its part in the service interaction. <u>Service-oriented business</u> collaborations do not necessarily imply exposing the entire peer-style business collaboration as a service itself but rather the collaboration uses service-based interchanges. Note that choreography as we have defined it here should not be confused with the term process choreography, which is defined in the Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view as "the description of the possible interactions that may take place between two or mere participants to fulfill an objective." This is an example of domain-specific	
2308	nomenclature that often leads to confusion and why we are making note of it here.	Comment [KJL82]: Issue 98

2309 A simple generic example of a choreography is illustrated in Figure 35.



2341		<ul> <li>is both human readable and machine processable;</li> </ul>	
2342		<ul> <li>is referenceable from the Service Description artifact.</li> </ul>	
2343	•	A well-defined service Behavior Model (as defined in the SOA-RM) that:	Comment [KJL85]: Issue 227
2344	-	<ul> <li>characterizes the knowledge of the actions invoked against the service and events that</li> </ul>	
2345		report real world effects as a result of those actions;	
2346		<ul> <li>characterizes the temporal relationships and temporal properties of actions and events</li> </ul>	
2347		associated in a service interaction:	
2348		<ul> <li>describe activities involved in a workflow activity that represents a unit of work;</li> </ul>	
2349		<ul> <li>describes the role (s) performed in a service-oriented business process or service-</li> </ul>	
2350		oriented business collaboration;	
2351		<ul> <li>is both human readable and machine processable;</li> </ul>	
2352		<ul> <li>is referenceable from the Service Description artifact.</li> </ul>	
2353		Service composition mechanisms to support orchestration of service-oriented business processes and	
2354	•	choreography of service-oriented business collaborations such as:	
2354		<ul> <li>Declarative and programmatic compositional languages;</li> </ul>	
2355			
2350		<ul> <li>Orchestration and/or choreography engines that support multi-step processes as part of a short-lived or long-lived business transaction;</li> </ul>	
2358			
2359		<ul> <li>Orchestration and/or choreography engines that support compensating transactions in the presences of exception and fault conditions.</li> </ul>	
2360 2361	•	Infrastructure services that provides mechanisms to support service interaction, including but not limited to:	Comment [KJL86]: Issue 300
2362			
2362		<ul> <li>mediation services within service interactions based on shared such as message and event brokers, providers, and/or buses that provide message translation/transformation.</li> </ul>	
2363		gateway capability, message persistence, reliable message delivery, and/or intelligent	
2365		routing semantics:	
2365			
2367		<ul> <li>binding services that support translation and transformation of multiple application-level protocols to standard network transport protocols;</li> </ul>	
2368			
2369		<ul> <li>auditing and logging services that provide a data store and mechanism to record information related to service interaction activity such as message traffic patterns,</li> </ul>	
2309		security violations, and service contract and policy violations	
2370			Comment IDED071: Jacua 404
2372		<ul> <li>security services that provides contralized authorization and authentication support, etc., which provide protection against common security threats in a SOA ecosystem;</li> </ul>	Comment [PFB87]: Issue 101
2372		<ul> <li>monitoring services such as hardware and software mechanisms that both monitor the</li> </ul>	
2373		performance of systems that host services and network traffic during service interaction,	Comment [PFB88]: Issue 229
2375		and are capable of generating regular monitoring reports.	
2376		A layered and tiered service component architecture that supports multiple message exchange	
2370		patterns (MEPs) in order to:	
2378		<ul> <li>promote the industry best practice of separation of concerns that facilitates flexibility in</li> </ul>	
2379		the presence of changing business requirements;	
2379		promote the industry best practice of separation of roles in a service development	
2381		lifecycle such that subject matter experts and teams are structured along areas of	
2382		expertise:	
2383		<ul> <li>support numerous standard interaction patterns, peer-to-peer interaction patterns,</li> </ul>	
2384		enterprise integration patterns, and business-to-business integration patterns.	Comment [PFB89]: Issue 102,
2001			230
		1.4 Deligion and Contracto Model	
2385	4	4.4 Policies and Contracts Model	
2386	А	common phenomenon of many machines and systems is that the scope of potential behavior is much	
2387		roader than is actually needed for a particular circumstance. This is especially true of a system as	
2388		owerful as a SOA ecosystem. As a result, the behavior and performance of the system tend to be under-	
2389		onstrained by the implementation; instead, the actual behavior is expressed by means of policies of	
2390		ome form. Policies define the choices that stakeholders make; these choices are used to guide the	
2301		citical behavior of the system to the desired behavior and performance	

2391 actual behavior of the system to the desired behavior and performance.

2392As noted in Section 3.2.5.2, a policy is an expression of constraints of some form that is promulgated by a2393stakeholder who has the responsibility of ensuring that the constraint is enforceabled. In contrast,

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 74 of 123 Comment [PFB90]: Issue 232

2398 2399	constraints are likely to be identical; in this model, we focus on the issues involved in representing policies and contracts and on some of the principles behind their enforcement.	
2400	4.4.1 Policy and Contract Representation	
2401 2402 2403	A <b>policy constraint</b> is a specific kind of constraint: the ontology of policies and contracts includes the core concepts of permission, obligation, owner, and subject. In addition, it may be necessary to be able combine policy constraints and to be able to resolve policy conflicts.	
2404	4.4.1.1 Policy Framework	
2405	Policy Framework	
2406	A policy framework is a language in which policy constraints may be expressed.	
2407 2408	A policy framework combines syntax for expressing policy constraints together with a decision procedure for determining if a policy constraint is satisfied.	
	Contract <is party="" td="" to<=""><td></td></is>	
	Ϋ́ Ι	
	Actor is bound by Constraint is bound by Stakeholder	
	expressed as	
	Policy <a>asserts</a>	
2409 2410	Figure 36 - Policies and Contracts	
2410 2411	We can characterize a policy framework in terms of a logical framework and an ontology of policies. The	
2411 2412 2413	policy ontology details specific kinds of policy constraints that can be expressed; and the logical framework is a 'glue' that allows us to express combinations of policies.	
2414	Logical Framework	
2415 2416	A logical framework is a linguistic framework consisting of a syntax – a way of writing expressions – and a semantics – a way of interpreting the expressions.	
2417	Policy Ontology	
2418 2419	A policy ontology is a formalization of a set of concepts that are relevant to forming policy expressions.	
2420	For example, a policy ontology that allows identification of simple constraints – such as the existence of a	
2421 2422	property, or that a value of a property should be compared to a fixed value – is often enough to express many basic constraints.	
2423 2424 2425	Included in many policy ontologies are the basic signals of permissions and obligations. Some policy frameworks are sufficiently constrained that there is no possibility of representing an obligation; in which case there is often no need to 'call out' the distinction between permissions and obligations.	
2426 2427 2428 2429	The logical framework is also a strong determiner of the expressivity of the policy framework: the richer the logical framework, the richer the set of policy constraints that can be expressed. However, there is a strong inverse correlation between such that increasing expressivity and yields less ease and greater inefficiency of implementation.	Comment [PFB92]: Issue 272
2430	In the discussion that follows we assume the following basic policy ontology:	
	soa-raf-v1.0-wd07Working Draft 0711 May 2012Standards Track Work ProductCopyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.Page 75 of 123	

2394

## contracts are **agreements** between participants. However, like policies, it is a necest that they are enforceable. 2395 2396

While responsibility for enforcement may differ, both contracts and policies share a common characteristic – there is a constraint that must be enforced. In both cases, the mechanisms needed to enforce constraints are likely to be identical; in this model, we focus on the issues involved in representing

2397 2398

## Comment [PFB91]: Issue 232

arv part of contracts

#### 2431 Policy Owner

2432 A policy owner is a stakeholder that asserts and enforces the policy.

#### 2433 Policy Subject

- 2434 A policy subject is an actor who is subject to the constraints of a policy or contract.
- 2435 Policy Constraint
- 2436A policy constraint is a measurable and enforceable proposition that characterizes the constraint2437that the policy is about.

#### 2438 Policy Object

2439A policy object is an identifiable state, action or resource that is potentially constrained by the2440policy.

### 2441 4.4.2 Policy and Contract Enforcement

The enforcement of policy constraints has to address two core problems: how to enforce the atomic policy constraints, and how to enforce combinations of policy constraints. In addition, it is necessary to address
the resolution of policy conflicts. <u>Contracts are the documented agreement between two or more parties</u>
but otherwise have the same enforcement requirements as policies.

### 2446 4.4.2.1 Enforcing Simple Policy Constraints

The two primary kinds of policy constraint – permission and obligation – naturally lead to different styles
 of enforcement. A permission constraint must typically be enforced prior to the policy subject invoking the
 policy object. On the other hand, an obligation constraint must typically be enforced after the fact through
 some form of auditing process and remedial action.

- For example, if a communications policy required that all communication be encrypted, this is enforceable
   at the point of communication: any attempt to communicate a message that is not encrypted can be
   blocked.
- 2454 Similarly, an obligation to pay for services rendered is enforced by ensuring that payment arrives within a 2455 reasonable period of time. Invoices are monitored for prompt (or lack of) payment.
- 2456 The key concepts in enforcing both forms of policy constraint are the policy decision and the policy 2457 enforcement.
- 2458 Policy Decision

2459

- A policy decision is a determination as to whether a given policy constraint is satisfied.
- 2460 A policy decision is effectively a measurement of some state typically a portion of the SOA ecosystem's
- shared state. This implies a certain *timeliness* in the measuring: a measurement that is too early or is too late does not actually help in determining if the policy constraint is satisfied appropriately.

#### 2463 Policy Enforcement

soa-raf-v

Standard

- 2464A policy enforcement is the use of a mechanism which limits the behavior and/or state of policy2465subjects to comply with a policy decision.
- 2466 A policy enforcement implies the use of some mechanism to ensure compliance with a policy decision.
- The range of mechanisms is completely dependent on the kinds of atomic policy constraints that the policy framework may support. As noted above, the two primary styles of constraint – permission and
- 2469 **obligation** –lead to different styles of enforcement.

## 2470 4.4.2.2 Conflict Resolution

- 2471 Whenever it is possible that more than one policy constraint applies in a given situation, there is the
- 2472 potential that the policy constraints themselves are not mutually consistent. For example, a policy
- constraint that requires communication to be encrypted and a policy constraint that requires an
- administrator to read every communication conflict with each other the two policy constraints cannot
   both be satisfied concurrently.

v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07
ds Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

Comment [KJL93]: Issue 237

11 May 2012

Page 76 of 123

In general, with sufficiently rich policy frameworks, it is not possible to always resolve policy conflicts 2476

2477 automatically. However, a reasonable approach is to augment the policy decision process with simple

2478 policy conflict resolution rules; with the potential for escalating a policy conflict to human adjudication.

#### 2479 **Policy Conflict**

2480 A policy conflict exists between two or more policy constraints in a policy decision process if the 2481 satisfaction of one or more policy constraints leads directly to the violation of one or more other 2482 policy constraints.

#### 2483 **Policy Conflict Resolution**

- 2484 A policy conflict resolution rule is a way of determining which policy constraints should prevail if a 2485 policy conflict occurs.
- 2486 The inevitable consequence of policy conflicts is that it is not possible to guarantee that all policy
- 2487 constraints are satisfied at all times. This, in turn, implies a certain *flexibility* in the application of policy 2488 constraints: each individual constraint may not always be honored.

#### 4.4.3 Architectural Implications 2489

- 2490 The key choices that must be made in a system of policies center on the policy framework, policy 2491 enforcement, and conflict resolution
- 2492 There SHOULD be a standard policy framework that is adopted across ownership domains within the • 2493 SOA ecosystem: 2494
  - This framework MUST permit the expression of simple policy constraints 0
  - The framework MAY allow (to a varying extent) the combination of policy constraints. 0
- 2496 including 2497

2495

2498

2499

2508

2509

2510 2511

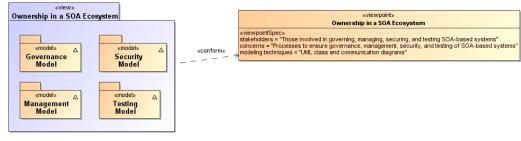
2512 2513

2515

2516

- Both positive and negative constraints •
- Conjunctions and disjunctions of constraints •
- The quantification of constraints •
- 2500 The framework MUST at least allow the policy subject and the policy object to be identified as 0 2501 well as the policy constraint.
- The framework MAY allow further structuring of policies into modules, inheritance between 2502 0 2503 policies and so on.
- 2504 There SHOULD be mechanisms that facilitate the application of policies:
- There SHOULD be mechanisms that allow policy decisions to be made, consistent with the 2505 policy frameworks. 2506 2507
  - There SHOULD be mechanisms to enforce policy decisions 0
    - There SHOULD be mechanisms to support the measurement of whether certain policy constraints are satisfied, or to what degree they are satisfied.
    - Such enforcement mechanisms MAY include support for both permission-style constraints and obligation-style constraints.
    - Enforcement mechanisms MAY support the simultaneous enforcement of multiple policy constraints across multiple points in the SOA ecosystem.
- 2514 There SHOULD be mechanisms to resolve policy conflicts 0
  - This MAY involve escalating policy conflicts to human adjudication. •
  - There SHOULD be mechanisms that support the management and promulgation of policies. 0

7	5 Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem View
8 9 0	Governments are instituted among Men, deriving their just power from the consent of the governed American Declaration of Independence
1	
2 3	The Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem View focuses on the issues, requirements and responsibilities involved in owning a SOA-based system.
4 5 6	Ownership of a SOA-based system in a SOA ecosystem raises significantly different challenges to owning other complex systems – such as Enterprise suites – because there are strong limits on the control and authority of any one party when a system spans multiple ownership domains.
7 3 9 0	Even when a SOA-based system is deployed internally within an organization, there are multiple internal stakeholders involved and there may not be a simple hierarchy of control and management. Thus, an early consideration of how multiple boundaries affect SOA-based systems provides a firm foundation for dealing with them in whatever form they are found rather than debating whether the boundaries should exist.
2 3	This view focuses on the governance and management of SOA-based systems, on the security challenges involved in running a SOA-based system, and testing challenges.



2534

- 2535 Figure 37 Model Elements Described in the Ownership in a SOA Ecosystem View
- 2536 The following subsections present models of these functions.

## 2537 5.1 Governance Model

The Reference Model defines Service Oriented Architecture as an architectural paradigm for organizing and utilizing distributed capabilities that may be under the control of different ownership domains [SOA-RM]. Consequently, it is important that organizations that plan to engage in service interactions adopt governance policies and procedures sufficient to ensure that there is standardization across both internal and external organizational boundaries to promote the effective creation and use of SOA-based services.

### 2543 5.1.1 Understanding Governance

### 2544 **5.1.1.1 Terminology**

2545Governance is about making decisions that are aligned with the overall organizational strategy and2546culture of the enterprise. [Gartner] It specifies the decision rights and accountability framework to2547encourage desirable behaviors [Weill/Ross-MIT Sloan School] towards realizing the strategy and2548defines incentives (positive or negative) towards that end. It is less about overt control and strict2549adherence to rules, and more about guidance and effective and equitable usage of resources to ensure2550sustainability of an organization's strategic objectives. [TOGAF v8.1]

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 78 of 123

- To accomplish this, governance requires organizational structure and processes and must identify who has authority to define and carry out its mandates. It must address the following questions:
- 2553 1. what decisions must be made to ensure effective management and use?,
- 2554 2. who should make these decisions?,
- 2555 3. how will these decisions be made and monitored? , and
- 2556 4. how will these decisions be communicated?
- 2557 The intent is to achieve goals, add value, and reduce risk.

Within a single ownership domain such as an enterprise, generally there is a hierarchy of governance
 structures. Some of the more common enterprise governance structures include corporate governance,
 technology governance, IT governance, and architecture governance [TOGAF v8.1]. These governance
 structures can exist at multiple levels (global, regional, and local) within the overall enterprise.

2562 It is often asserted that SOA governance is a specialization of IT governance as there is a natural hierarchy of these types of governance structures; however, the focus of SOA governance is less on decisions to ensure effective management and use of IT as it is to ensure effective management and use of SOA-based systems. Certainly, SOA governance must still answer the basic questions also associated with IT governance, i.e., who should make the decisions, and how these decisions will be made and monitored.

### 2568 5.1.1.2 Relationship to Management

2569 There is often confusion centered on the relationship between governance and management. As 2570 described earlier, governance is concerned with decision making. Management, on the other hand, is 2571 concerned with execution. Put another way, governance describes the world as leadership wants it to be; management executes activities that intend to make the leadership's desired world a reality. Where 2572 governance determines who has the authority and responsibility for making decisions and the 2573 2574 establishment of guidelines for how those decisions should be made, management is the actual process of making, implementing, and measuring the impact of those decisions [Loeb]. Consequently, 2575 2576 governance and management work in concert to ensure a well-balanced and functioning organization as well as an ecosystem of inter-related organizations. In the sections that follow, we elaborate further on the 2577 relationship between governance and management in terms of setting and enforcing service policies. 2578

2579 contracts, and standards as well as addressing issues surrounding regulatory compliance.

### 2580 5.1.1.3 Why is SOA Governance Important?

One of the hallmarks of SOA that distinguishes it from other architectural paradigms for distributed computing is the ability to provide a uniform means to offer, discover, interact with and use capabilities (as well the ability to compose new capabilities from existing ones) all in an environment that transcends domains of ownership. Consequently, ownership, and issues surrounding it, such as obtaining acceptable terms and conditions (T&Cs) in a contract, is one of the primary topics for SOA governance. Generally, IT governance does not include T&Cs, for example, as a condition of use as its primary concern.

- Just as other architectural paradigms, technologies, and approaches to IT are subject to change and
   evolution, so too is SOA. Setting policies that allow change management and evolution, establishing
   strategies for change, resolving disputes that arise, and ensuring that SOA-based systems continue to
- 2590 fulfill the goals of the business are all reasons why governance is important to SOA.

### 2591 **5.1.1.4 Governance Stakeholders and Concerns**

As noted in Section 3.2.1 the participants in a service interaction include the service provider, the service consumer, and other interested or unintentional third parties. Depending on the circumstances, it may also include the owners of the underlying capabilities that the SOA services access. Governance must establish the policies and rules under which duties and responsibilities are defined and the expectations of participants are grounded. The expectations include transparency in aspects where transparency is mandated; trust in the impartial and consistent application of governance; and assurance of reliable and robust behavior throughout the SOA ecosystem.

### 2599 5.1.2 A Generic Model for Governance

#### 2600 Governance

2601Governance is the prescribing of conditions and constraints consistent with satisfying common2602goals and the structures and processes needed to define and respond to actions taken towards2603realizing those goals.

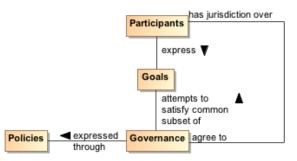
2604 The following is a generic model of governance represented by segmented models that begin with

2605 motivation and proceed through measuring compliance. It is not all-encompassing but a focused subset 2606 that captures the aspects necessary to describe governance for SOA. It does not imply that practical 2607 application of governance is a single, isolated instance of these models; in reality, there may be

hierarchical and parallel chains of governance that deal with different aspects or focus on different goals.
 This is discussed further in section 5.1.2.5. The defined models are simultaneously applicable to each of
 the overlapping instances.

- A given enterprise may already have portions of these models in place. To a large extent, the models
- shown here are not specific to SOA; discussions on direct applicability begin in section 5.1.3.

### 2613 5.1.2.1 Motivating Governance



### 2614

2615 Figure 38 - Motivating Governance

An organizational domain such as an enterprise is made up of participants who may be individuals or groups of individuals forming smaller organizational units within the enterprise. The overall business strategy should be consistent with the goals of the participants; otherwise, the business strategy would not provide value to the participants and governance towards those ends becomes difficult if not impossible. This is not to say that an instance of governance simultaneously satisfies all the goals of all the participants; rather, the goals of any governance instance must sufficiently satisfy a useful subset of

2622 each participant's goals so as to provide value and ensure the cooperation of all the participants.

A policy is the formal characterization of the conditions and constraints that governance deems as
necessary to realize the goals which it is attempting to satisfy. Policy may identify required conditions or
actions or may prescribe limitations or other constraints on permitted conditions or actions. For example,
a policy may prescribe that safeguards must be in place to prevent unauthorized access to sensitive
material. It may also prohibit use of computers for activities unrelated to the specified work assignment.
Policy is made operational through the promulgation and implementation of Rules and Regulations (as
defined in section 5.1.2.3).

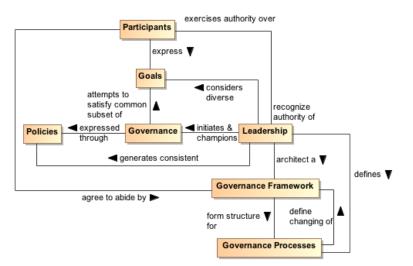
As noted in section 4.4.2, policy may be asserted by any participant or on behalf of the participant by its organization. Part of the purpose of governance is to arbitrate among diverse goals of participants and the diverse policies articulated to realize those goals. The intent is to form a consistent whole that allows governance to minimize ambiguity about its purpose. While resolving all ambiguity would be an ideal, it is unlikely that all inconsistencies will be identified and resolved before governance becomes operational.

For governance to have effective jurisdiction over participants, there must be some degree of agreement by all participants that they will abide by the governance mandates. A minimal degree of agreement often presages participants who "slow-roll" if not actively rejecting compliance with Policies that express the specifics of governance.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Working Draft 07 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

11 May 2012 Page 80 of 123

#### 2639 5.1.2.2 Setting Up Governance



2640

2641 Figure 39 - Setting Up Governance

#### 2642 Leadership

Leadership is the entity who has the responsibility and authority to generate consistent policies
 through which the goals of governance can be expressed and to define and champion the
 structures and processes through which governance is realized.

#### 2646 Governance Framework

2647The Governance Framework is a set of organizational structures that enable governance to be2648consistently defined, clarified, and as needed, modified to respond to changes in its domain of2649concern.

#### 2650 Governance Processes

- 2651Governance Processes are the defined set of activities that are performed within the Governance2652Framework to enable the consistent definition, application, and as needed, modification of Rules2653that organize and regulate the activities of participants for the fulfillment of expressed policies.2654(See section 5.1.2.3 for elaboration on the relationship of Governance Processes and Rules.)
- As noted earlier, governance requires an appropriate organizational structure and identification of who
   has authority to make governance decisions. In Figure 39, the entity with governance authority is
   designated the Leadership. This is someone, possibly one or more of the participants, which participants
   recognize as having authority for a given purpose or over a given set of issues or concerns.
- The Leadership is responsible for prescribing or delegating a working group to prescribe the Governance Framework that forms the structure for Governance Processes that define how governance is to be carried out. This does not itself define the specifics of how governance is to be applied, but it does
- provide an unambiguous set of procedures that should ensure consistent actions which participants agree are fair and account for sufficient input on the subjects to which governance is applied.
- 2664 The participants may be part of the working group that codifies the Governance Framework and 2665 Processes. When complete, the participants must acknowledge and agree to abide by the products
- 2666 generated through application of this structure.
- The Governance Framework and Processes are often documented in the constitution or charter of a body created or designated to oversee governance. This is discussed further in the next section. Note that the
- 2669 Governance Processes should also include those necessary to modify the Governance Framework itself.

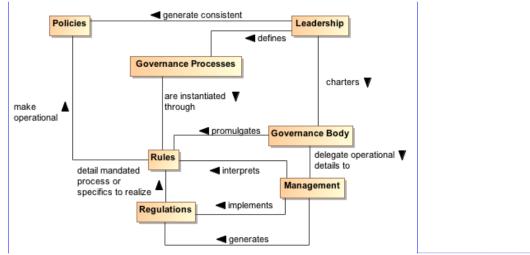
#### An important function of Leadership is not only to initiate but also be the consistent champion of governance. Those responsible for carrying out governance mandates must have Leadership who make

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Page 81 of 123

2672 it clear to participants that expressed Policies are seen as a means to realizing established goals and that

2673 compliance with governance is required.

### 2674 5.1.2.3 Carrying Out Governance



**Comment [KJL94]:** Comment 115: Regulations derived from Rules

2675

#### 2676 Figure 40 - Carrying Out Governance

- 2677 Rule
- 2678A Rule is a prescribed guide for carrying out activities and processes leading to desired results,2679e.g. the operational realization of policies.

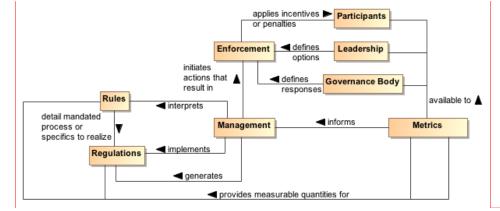
### 2680 Regulation

2681A Regulation is a mandated process or the specific details that derive from the interpretation of2682Rules and lead to measureable quantities against which compliance can be measured.

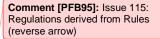
2683 To carry out governance, Leadership charters a Governance Body to promulgate the Rules needed to 2684 make the Policies operational. The Governance Body acts in line with Governance Processes for its rule-2685 making process and other functions. Whereas Governance is the setting of Policies and defining the 2686 Rules that provide an operational context for Policies, Governance Body may delegate the operational details of governance to Management. Management generates Regulations that specify details for Rules 2687 and other procedures to implement both Rules and Regulations. For example, Leadership could set a 2688 2689 Policy that all authorized parties should have access to data, the Governance Body would promulgate a 2690 Rule that PKI certificates are required to establish identity of authorized parties, and Management can 2691 specify a Regulation of who it deems to be a recognized PKI issuing body. In summary, Policy is a 2692 predicate to be satisfied and Rules prescribe the activities by which that satisfying occurs. A number of 2693 rules may be required to satisfy a given policy; the carrying out of a rule may contribute to several policies 2694 being realized.

2695 Whereas the Governance Framework and Processes are fundamental for having participants 2696 acknowledge and commit to compliance with governance, the Rules and Regulations provide operational 2697 constraints that may require resource commitments or other levies on the participants. It is important for 2698 participants to consider the framework and processes to be fair, unambiguous, and capable of being carried out in a consistent manner and to have an opportunity to formally accept or ratify this situation. 2699 2700 Rules and Regulations, however, do not require individual acceptance by any given participant although 2701 some level of community comment may be part of the Governance Processes. Having agreed to 2702 governance, the participants are bound to comply or be subject to prescribed mechanisms for 2703 enforcement.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 82 of 123



### 2704 5.1.2.4 Ensuring Governance Compliance



#### 2705

2706 Figure 41 - Ensuring Governance Compliance

2707 Setting Rules and Regulations does not ensure effective governance unless compliance can be

2708 measured and Rules and Regulations can be enforced. Metrics are those conditions and quantities that

2709 can be measured to characterize actions and results. Rules and Regulations MUST be based on

collected Metrics or there is no means for Management to assess compliance. The Metrics are availableto the participants, the Leadership, and the Governance Body so what is measured and the results of

2712 measurement are clear to everyone.

2713 The Leadership in its relationship with participants has certain options that can be used for Enforcement.

A common option may be to affect future funding. The Governance Body defines specific enforcement responses, such as what degree of compliance is necessary for full funding to be restored. It is up to

2716 Management to identify compliance shortfalls and to initiate the Enforcement process.

2717 Note, enforcement does not strictly need to be negative consequences. Management can use Metrics to 2718 identify exemplars of compliance and Leadership can provide options for rewarding the participants. The

2719 Governance Body defines awards or other incentives.

### 2720 5.1.2.5 Considerations for Multiple Governance Chains

As noted in section 5.1.2, instances of the governance model often occur as a tiered arrangement, with governance at some level delegating specific authority and responsibility to accomplish a focused portion of the original level's mandate. For example, a corporation may encompass several lines of business and each line of business governs its own affairs in a manner that is consistent with and contributes to the goals of the parent organization. Within the line of business, an IT group may be given the mandate to provide and maintain IT resources, giving rise to IT governance.

In addition to tiered governance, there may be multiple governance chains working in parallel. For
example, a company making widgets has policies intended to ensure they make high quality widgets and
make an impressive profit for their shareholders. On the other hand, Sarbanes-Oxley is a parallel
governance chain in the United States that specifies how the management must handle its accounting
and information that needs to be given to its shareholders. The parallel chains may just be additive or
may be in conflict and require some harmonization.

- 2733 Being distributed and representing different ownership domains, a SOA participant falls under the
- 2734 jurisdiction of multiple governance domains simultaneously and may individually need to resolve
- consequent conflicts. The governance domains may specify precedence for governance conformance or it may fall to the discretion of the participant to decide on the course of actions they believe appropriate.

### 2737 5.1.3 Governance Applied to SOA

### 2738 5.1.3.1 Where SOA Governance is Different

2739 SOA governance is often discussed in terms of IT governance, but rather than a parent-child relationship, Figure 42 shows the two as siblings within the general governance described in section 5.1.2. There are 2740 2741 obvious dependencies and a need for coordination between the two, but the idea of aligning IT with 2742 business already demonstrates that resource providers and resource consumers must be working towards common goals if they are to be productive and efficient. While SOA governance is shown to be 2743 active in the area of infrastructure, it is a specialized concern for having a dependable platform to support 2744 2745 service interaction: a range of traditional IT issues is therefore out of scope of this document. A SOA governance plan for an enterprise will not of itself resolve shortcomings with the enterprise's IT 2746 2747 governance. 2748 Governance in the context of SOA is that organization of services: that promotes their visibility; that

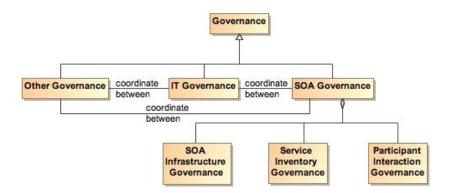
- 2748 Governance in the context of SOA is that organization of services: that promotes their visibility; that 2749 facilitates interaction among service participants: and that directs that the results of service interactions
- are those real world effects as described within the service description and constrained by policies and
   contracts as assembled in the execution context.
- SOA governance must specifically account for control across different ownership domains, i.e. all the
   participants may not be under the jurisdiction of a single governance authority. However, for governance
   to be effective, the participants must agree to recognize the authority of the Governance Body and must
   operate within the Governance Framework and through the Governance Processes so defined.
- SOA governance must account for interactions across ownership boundaries, which may also imply across enterprise governance boundaries. For such situations, governance emphasizes the need for agreement that some Governance Framework and Governance Processes have jurisdiction, and the governance defined must satisfy the goals of the participants for cooperation to continue. A standards development organization such as OASIS is an example of voluntary agreement to governance over a limited domain to satisfy common goals.
- The specifics discussed in the figures in the previous sections are equally applicable to governance across ownership boundaries as it is within a single boundary. There is a charter agreed to when participants become members of the organization, and this charter sets up the structures and processes to be followed. Leadership may be shared by the leadership of the overall organization and the leadership of individual groups themselves chartered per the Governance Processes. There are Rules/Regulations specific to individual efforts for which participants agree to local goals, and Enforcement can be loss of voting rights or under extreme circumstances, expulsion from the group.
- Thus, the major difference for SOA governance is an appreciation for the cooperative nature of the enterprise and its reliance on furthering common goals if productive participation is to continue.

### 2771 5.1.3.2 What Must be Governed

An expected benefit of employing SOA principles is the ability to quickly bring resources to bear to deal with unexpected and evolving situations. This requires a great deal of confidence in the underlying

- 2774 capabilities that can be accessed and in the services that enable the access. It also requires considerable
- 2775 flexibility in the ways these resources can be employed. Thus, SOA governance requires establishing
- 2776 confidence and trust (see Section 3.2.5.1) while instituting a solid framework that enables flexibility,
- 2777 indicating a combination of strict control over a limited set of foundational aspects but minimum
- 2778 constraints beyond those bounds.
- 2779

Comment [PFB96]: Issue 117



#### 2780

2781 Figure 42 - Relationship Among Types of Governance

- 2782 SOA governance applies to three aspects of service definition and use:
- SOA infrastructure the "plumbing" that provides utility functions that enable and support the use of the service
- Service inventory the requirements on a service to permit it to be accessed within the infrastructure
- Participant interaction the consistent expectations with which all participants are expected to comply

#### 2789 5.1.3.2.1 Governance of SOA Infrastructure

2790 The SOA infrastructure is likely composed of several families of SOA services that provide access to 2791 fundamental computing business services. These include, among many others, services such as 2792 messaging, security, storage, discovery, and mediation. The provisioning of an infrastructure on which 2793 these services may be accessed and the general realm of those contributing as utility functions of the 2794 infrastructure are a traditional IT governance concern. In contrast, the focus of SOA governance is how 2795 the existence and use of the services enables the SOA ecosystem.

By characterizing the environment as containing families of SOA services, the assumption is that there
 may be multiple approaches to providing the business services or variations in the actual business

- 2798 services provided. For example, discovery could be based on text search, on metadata search, on
- approximate matches when exact matches are not available, and numerous other variations. The
   underlying implementation of search algorithms are not the purview of SOA governance, but the access

to the resulting service infrastructure enabling discovery must be stable, reliable, and extremely robust to

- all operating conditions. Such access enables other specialized SOA services to use the infrastructure in
- 2803 dependable and predictable ways, and is where governance is important.

#### 2804 5.1.3.2.2 Governance of the Service Inventory

- Given an infrastructure in which other SOA services can operate, a key governance issue is which SOA services to allow in the ecosystem. The major concern SHOULD be a definition of well-behaved services, where the required behavior will inherit their characteristics from experiences with distributed computing but also evolve with SOA experience. A major requirement for ensuring well-behaved services is collecting sufficient metrics to know how the service affects the SOA infrastructure and whether it complies with established infrastructure policies.
- 2811 Another common concern of service approval is whether there is a possibility of duplication of function by
- 2812 multiple services. Some governance models talk to a tightly controlled environment where a primary
- 2813 concern is to avoid any service duplication. Other governance models talk to a market of services where
- 2814 the consumers have wide choices. For the latter, it is anticipated that the better services will emerge from
- 2815 market consensus and the availability of alternatives will drive innovation.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 85 of 123 2816 Some combination of control and openness will emerge, possibly with a different appropriate balance for 2817 different categories of use. For SOA governance, the issue is less which services are approved but rather 2818 ensuring that sufficient description is available to support informed decisions for appropriate use. Thus, SOA governance SHOULD concentrate on identifying the required attributes to adequately describe a 2819 2820 service, the required target values of the attributes, and the standards for defining the meaning of the attributes and their target values. Governance may also specify the processes by which the attribute

2821 values are measured and the corresponding certification that some realized attribute set may imply. 2822

2823 For example, unlimited access for using a service may require a degree of life cycle maturity that has 2824 demonstrated sufficient testing over a certain size community. Alternately, the policy may specify that a service in an earlier phase of its life cycle may be made available to a smaller, more technically 2825 sophisticated group in order to collect the metrics that would eventually allow the service to advance its 2826 2827 life cycle status.

2828 This aspect of governance is tightly connected to description because, given a well-behaved set of services, it is the responsibility of the consumer (or policies promulgated by the consumer's organization) 2829 2830 to decide whether a service is sufficient for that consumer's intended use. The goal is to avoid global 2831 governance specifying criteria that are too restrictive or too lax for the local needs of which global 2832 governance has little insight.

2833

Such an approach to specifying governance allows independent domains to describe services in local 2834 terms while still having the services available for informed use across domains. In addition, changes to 2835 the attribute sets within a domain can be similarly described, thus supporting the use of newly described

resources with the existing ones without having to update the description of the entire legacy content. 2836

#### 2837 5.1.3.2.3 Governance of Participant Interaction

2838 Finally, given a reliable services infrastructure and a predictable set of services, the third aspect of 2839 governance is prescribing what is required during a service interaction.

2840 Governance would specify adherence to service interface and service reachability parameters and would require that the result of an interaction MUST correspond to the real world effects as contained in the 2841 service description. Governance would ensure preconditions for service use are satisfied, in particular 2842 2843 those related to security aspects such as user authentication, authorization, and non-repudiation. If 2844 conflicts arise, governance would specify resolution processes to ensure appropriate agreements, 2845 policies, and conditions are met.

2846 It would also rely on sufficient monitoring by the SOA infrastructure to ensure services remain well-

behaved during interactions, e.g. do not use excessive resources or exhibit other prohibited behavior. 2847

Governance would also require that policy agreements as documented in the execution context for the 2848

interaction are observed and that the results and any after effects are consistent with the agreed policies. 2849

- 2850 Here, governance focuses more on contractual and legal aspects rather than the precursor descriptive
- 2851 aspects. SOA governance may prescribe the processes by which SOA-specific policies are allowed to 2852 change, but there are probably more business-specific policies that will be governed by processes
- 2853 outside SOA governance.

#### 2854 5.1.3.3 Overarching Governance Concerns

2855 There are numerous governance related concerns whose effects span the three areas just discussed. 2856 One is the area of standards, how these are mandated, and how the mandates may change. The Web 2857 Services standards stack is an example of relevant standards where a significant number are still under development. In addition, while there are notional scenarios that guide what standards are being 2858 2859 developed, the fact that many of these standards do not yet exist precludes operational testing of their 2860 adequacy or effectiveness as a necessary and sufficient set.

2861 That said, standards are critical to creating a SOA ecosystem where SOA services can be introduced. used singularly, and combined with other services to deliver complex business functionality. As with other 2862 2863 aspects of SOA governance, the Governance Body should identify the minimum set felt to be needed and 2864 rigorously enforce that that set be used where appropriate. The Governance Body takes care to expand and evolve the mandated standards in a predictable manner and with sufficient technical guidance that 2865 new services are able to coexist as much as possible with the old, and changes to standards do not 2866 2867 cause major disruptions.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

11 May 2012 Page 86 of 123

Another area that may see increasing activity as SOA expands is additional regulation by governments and associated legal institutions. New laws may deal with transactions that are service based, possibly including taxes on the transactions. Disclosure laws may mandate certain elements of description so both the consumer and provider act in a predictable environment and are protected from ambiguity in intent or action. Such laws spawn rules and regulations that will influence the metrics collected for evaluation of compliance.

### 2874 5.1.3.4 Considerations for SOA Governance

2875 The Reference Architecture definition of a loosely coupled system is one in which the constraints on the 2876 interactions between components are minimal: sufficient to permit interoperation without additional 2877 constraints that may be an artifact of implementation technology. While governance experience for 2878 standalone systems provides useful guides, we must be careful not to apply constraints that would 2879 preclude the flexibility, agility, and adaptability we expect to realize from a SOA ecosystem.

One of the strengths of the SOA paradigm is it can make effective use of diversity rather than requiring 2880 2881 monolithic solutions. Heterogeneous organizations can interact without requiring each conforms to 2882 uniform tools, representation, and processes. However, with this diversity comes the need to adequately 2883 define those elements necessary for consistent interaction among systems and participants, such as 2884 which communication protocol, what level of security, which vocabulary for payload content of messages. The solution is not always to lock down these choices but to standardize alternatives and standardize the 2885 representations through which an unambiguous identification of the alternative chosen can be conveved. 2886 2887 For example, the URI standard specifies the URI string, including what protocol is being used, what is the target of the message, and how parameters may be attached. It does not limit the available protocols, the 2888 2889 semantics of the target address, or the parameters that can be transferred. Thus, as with our definition of 2890 loose coupling, it provides absolute constraints but minimizes which constraints it imposes.

There is not a one-size-fits-all governance but a need to understand the types of things governance is called upon to do in the context of the goals of the SOA paradigm. Some communities may initially desire and require very stringent governance policies and procedures while others see need for very little. Over time, best practices will evolve, resulting in some consensus on a sensible minimum and, except in extreme cases where it is demonstrated to be necessary, a loosening of strict governance toward the best practice mean.

2897 A guestion of how much governance may center on how much time governance activities require versus 2898 how quickly is the system being governed expected to respond to changing conditions. For large single 2899 systems that take years to develop, the governance process could move slowly without having a serious negative impact. For example, if something takes two years to develop and the steps involved in 2900 2901 governance take two months to navigate, then the governance can go along in parallel and may not have a significant impact on system response to changes. Situations where it takes as long to navigate 2902 2903 governance requirements as it does to develop a response are examples where governance may need to 2904 be reevaluated as to whether it facilitates or inhibits the desired results. Thus, the speed at which services are expected to appear and evolve needs to be considered when deciding the processes for control. The 2905 2906 added weight of governance should be appropriate for overall goals of the application domain and the 2907 service environment.

- 2908 Governance, as with other aspects of any SOA implementation, should start small and be conceptualized 2909 in a way that keeps it flexible, scalable, and realistic. A set of useful guidelines would include:
  - Do not hardwire things that will inevitably change. For example, develop a system that uses the representation of policies rather than code the policies into the implementations.
- Avoid setting up processes that demo well for three services without considering how they may work for 300. Similarly, consider whether the display of status and activity for a small number of services will also be effective for an operator in a crisis situation looking at dozens of services, each with numerous, sometimes overlapping and sometimes differing activities.
   Maintain consistency and realism. A service solution responding to a natural disaster cannot be
  - Maintain consistency and realism. A service solution responding to a natural disaster cannot be expected to complete a 6-week review cycle but be effective in a matter of hours.

2910

2911

2917

## 2918 **5.1.4 Architectural Implications of SOA Governance**

2919 2920	The description of SOA governance indicates numerous architectural requirements on the SOA ecosystem:
2921 2922 2923 2924 2925 2926	<ul> <li>Governance is expressed through policies and assumes multiple use of focused policy modules that can be employed across many common circumstances. This requires the existence of:         <ul> <li>descriptions to enable the policy modules to be visible, where the description includes a unique identifier for the policy and a sufficient, and preferably a machine process-able, representation of the meaning of terms used to describe the policy, its functions, and its effects;</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
2927 2928 2929 2930	<ul> <li>one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for policies that best meet the search criteria specified by the service participant; where the discovery mechanism will have access to the individual policy descriptions, possibly through some repository mechanism;</li> </ul>
2931 2932	<ul> <li>accessible storage of policies and policy descriptions, so service participants can access, examine, and use the policies as defined.</li> </ul>
2933 2934 2935	<ul> <li>Governance requires that the participants understand the intent of governance, the structures created to define and implement governance, and the processes to be followed to make governance operational. This requires the existence of:</li> </ul>
2936 2937	<ul> <li>an information collection site, such as a Web page or portal, where governance information is stored and from which the information is always available for access;</li> </ul>
2938 2939 2940	<ul> <li>a mechanism to inform participants of significant governance events, such as changes in policies, rules, or regulations;</li> <li>accessible storage of the specifics of Governance Processes;</li> </ul>
2941 2942	<ul> <li>SOA services to access automated implementations of the Governance Processes</li> <li>Governance policies are made operational through rules and regulations. This requires the</li> </ul>
2943 2944	<ul> <li>existence of:</li> <li>descriptions to enable the rules and regulations to be visible, where the description</li> </ul>
2945 2946	includes a unique identifier and a sufficient, and preferably a machine process-able, representation of the meaning of terms used to describe the rules and regulations;
2947 2948 2949 2950	<ul> <li>one or more discovery mechanisms that enable searching for rules and regulations that may apply to situations corresponding to the search criteria specified by the service participant; where the discovery mechanism will have access to the individual descriptions of rules and regulations, possibly through some repository mechanism;</li> </ul>
2951 2952	<ul> <li>accessible storage of rules and regulations and their respective descriptions, so service participants can understand and prepare for compliance, as defined.</li> </ul>
2953 2954 2955	<ul> <li>SOA services to access automated implementations of the Governance Processes.</li> <li>Governance implies management to define and enforce rules and regulations. Management is discussed more specifically in section 5.3, but in a parallel to</li> </ul>
2956 2957 2958	<ul> <li>governance, management requires the existence of:</li> <li>an information collection site, such as a Web page or portal, where management information is stored and from which the information is always available for access;</li> </ul>
2959 2960 2961	<ul> <li>a mechanism to inform participants of significant management events, such as changes in rules or regulations;</li> <li>accessible storage of the specifics of processes followed by management.</li> </ul>
2962 2963	<ul> <li>Governance relies on metrics to define and measure compliance. This requires the existence of:</li> <li>the infrastructure monitoring and reporting information on SOA resources;</li> </ul>
2964 2965	<ul> <li>possible interface requirements to make accessible metrics information generated or most easily accessed by the service itself.</li> </ul>

# 2966 **5.2 Security Model**

2967 Security is one aspect of confidence – the confidence in the integrity, reliability, and confidentiality of the 2968 system. In particular, security focuses on those aspects of assurance that involve the accidental or malign 2969 intent of other people to damage or compromise trust in the system and on the availability of SOA-based 2970 systems to perform desired capability.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Page 88 of 123

#### 2971 Security

2972 The set of mechanisms for ensuring and enhancing trust and confidence in the SOA ecosystem.

2973 Providing for security for Service Oriented Architecture is somewhat different than for other contexts; 2974 although many of the same principles apply equally to SOA and to other systems. The fact that SOA 2975 embraces crossing ownership boundaries makes the issues involved with moving data more visible.

2976 As well as securing the movement of data within and across ownership boundaries, security often

revolves around resources: the need to guard certain resources against inappropriate access – whether reading, writing or otherwise manipulating those resources.

Any comprehensive security solution must take into account the people that are using, maintaining and
 managing SOA-based systems. Furthermore, the relationships between them must also be incorporated:
 any security assertions that may be associated with particular interactions originate in the people that are
 behind the interaction.

- 2983 We analyze security in terms of the social structures that define the legitimate permissions, obligations 2984 and roles of people in relation to the system, and mechanisms that must be put into place to realize a 2985 secure system. The former are typically captured in a series of security policy statements; the latter in 2986 terms of security guards that ensure that policies are enforced.
- 2987 How and when to apply these derived security policy mechanisms is directly associated with the

assessment of the *threat model* and a *security response model*. The threat model identifies the kinds of threats that directly impact the message and/or application of constraints and the response model is the proposed mitigation to those threats. Properly implemented, the result can be an acceptable level of risk to the safety and integrity within the SOA ecosystem.

### 2992 5.2.1 Secure Interaction Concepts

2993 We can characterize secure interactions in terms of key security concepts [ISO/IEC 27002]:

2994 confidentiality, integrity, authentication, authorization, non-repudiation, and availability. The concepts for 2995 secure interactions are well defined in other standards and publications. The security concepts here are 2996 not defined but rather related to the SOA ecosystem perspective of the SOA-RAF.

### 2997 5.2.1.1 Confidentiality

2998 Confidentiality concerns the protection of privacy of participants in their interactions. Confidentiality refers 2999 to the assurance that unauthorized entities are not able to read messages or parts of messages that are 3000 transmitted.

3001 Note that confidentiality has degrees: in a completely confidential exchange, third parties would not even 3002 be aware that a confidential exchange has occurred. In a partially confidential exchange, the identities of 3003 the participants may be known but the content of the exchange obscured.

### 3004 **5.2.1.2 Integrity**

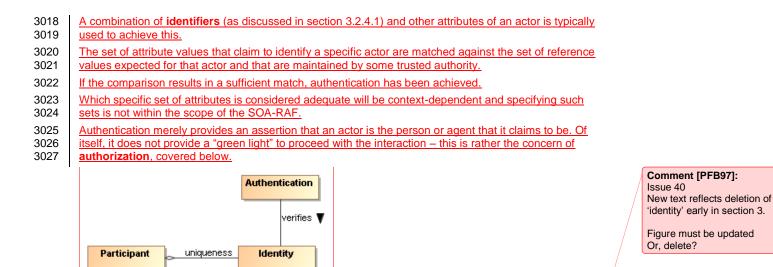
Integrity concerns the protection of information that is exchanged – either from unauthorized writing or
 inadvertent corruption. Integrity refers to the assurance that information that has been exchanged has not
 been altered.

- Integrity is different from confidentiality in that messages that are sent from one participant to another
   may be obscured to a third party, but the third party may still be able to introduce his own content into the
   exchange without the knowledge of the participants.
- Section 5.2.4 describes common computing techniques for providing confidentiality and integrity during
   message exchanges.

#### 3013 5.2.1.3 Authentication

3014<br/>3015<br/>3015<br/>3016<br/>3016<br/>3016<br/>3016<br/>3017Authentication concerns the identity of the participants in an exchange and refers to the means by which<br/>one participant can be assured of the identity of other participants. Figure 43 applies authentication to the<br/>identity of participants. Authentication is concerned with addressing a need to adequately identify actors<br/>in a potential interaction or joint action.<br/>soa-raf-v1.0-wd07Working Draft 0711 May 2012

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Working Draft 07 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 89 of 123

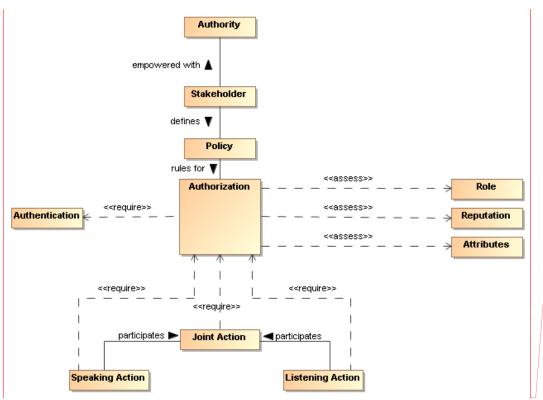


3028 3029 Figure 43 - Authentication

### 3030 5.2.1.4 Authorization

3031 Authorization concerns the legitimacy of the interaction. Authorization refers to the means by which a

3032 stakeholder may be assured that the information and actions that are exchanged are either explicitly or 3033 implicitly approved.



#### Comment [PFB98]: Issue 128 – speaking and listening actions need clarifying; remove both

#### 3034 3035

#### Figure 44 - Authorization

The roles and attributes which provide a participant's credentials are expanded to include reputation. Reputation often helps determine willingness to interact, for example, reviews of a service provider will influence the decision to interact with the service provider. The roles, reputation, and attributes are represented as assertions measured by authorization decision points.

3040 The role of policy for security is to permit stakeholders to express their choices. In Figure 44, a policy is a

3041 written constraint and the role, reputation, and attribute assertions are evaluated according to the 3042 constraints in the authorization policy. A combination of security mechanisms and their control via explicit

3043 policies can form the basis of an authorization solution.

### 3044 5.2.1.5 Non-repudiation

Non-repudiation concerns the accountability of participants. To foster trust in the performance of a system
 used to conduct shared activities, it is important that the participants are not able to later deny their
 actions: to repudiate them. Non-repudiation refers to the means by which a participant may not, at a later
 time, successfully deny having participated in the interaction or having performed the actions as reported

3049 by other participants.

### 3050 5.2.1.6 Availability

Availability concerns the ability of systems to use and offer the services for which they were designed.
 One of the threats against availability is the so-called denial of service attack in which attackers attempt to
 prevent legitimate access to the system.

We differentiate here between general availability – which includes aspects such as systems reliability – and availability as a security concept where we need to respond to active threats to the system.

> 11 May 2012 Page 91 of 123

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	

### 3056 5.2.2 Where SOA Security is Different

The core security concepts are fundamental to all social interactions. The evolution of sharing information
within a SOA ecosystem requires the flexibility to dynamically secure computing interactions where the
owning social groups, roles, and authority are constantly changing as described in section 5.1.3.1.
SOA policy-based security can be more adaptive than previous computing technologies, and typically
involves a greater degree of distributed mechanisms.
Standards for security, as is the case with all aspects of SOA implementation and use, play a large role in

3062 Standards for security, as is the case with all aspects of SOA implementation and use, play a large role in 3063 flexible security on a global scale. SOA security may also involve greater auditing and reporting to adhere 3064 to regulatory compliance established by governance structures.

### 3065 5.2.3 Security Threats

3066 There are a number of ways in which an attacker may attempt to compromise the security of a system. 3067 The two primary sources of attack are third parties attempting to subvert interactions between legitimate 3068 participants and an entity that is participating but attempting to subvert other participants. The latter is 3069 particularly important in a SOA ecosystem where there may be multiple ownership boundaries and trust Comment [PFB99]: Issue 135 3070 boundaries 3071 The threat model lists some common threats that relate to the core security concepts listed in Section 5.2.1. Each technology choice in the realization of a SOA-based system can potentially have many 3072 Comment [PFB100]: Issue 135 3073 threats to consider. 3074 Message alteration 3075 If an attacker is able to modify the content (or even the order) of messages that are exchanged without the legitimate participants being aware of it then the attacker has successfully 3076 3077 compromised the security of the system. In effect, the participants may unwittingly serve the needs of the attacker rather than their own. 3078 3079 An attacker may not need to completely replace a message with his own to achieve his objective: replacing the identity of the initially intended recipient of a transaction may be enough. 3080 Comment [PFB101]: Issue 136 3081 Message interception If an attacker is able to intercept and understand messages exchanged between participants, 3082 3083 then the attacker may be able to gain advantage. This is probably the most commonly understood security threat. 3084 Man in the middle 3085 3086 In a man-in-the-middle attack, the legitimate participants believe that they are interacting with 3087 each other; but are in fact interacting with the attacker. The attacker attempts to convince each 3088 participant that he is their correspondent; whereas in fact he is not. In a successful man-in-the-middle attack, legitimate participants do not have an accurate 3089 3090 understanding of the state of the other participants. The attacker can use this to subvert the 3091 intentions of the participants. 3092 Spoofing 3093 In a spoofing attack, the attacker convinces a participant that he is really someone else -3094 someone that the participant would normally trust. 3095 Denial of service attack 3096 In a denial of service (DoS) attack, the attacker attempts to prevent legitimate users from making 3097 use of the service. A DoS attack is easy to mount and can cause considerable harm: by preventing legitimate interactions, or by slowing them down enough, the attacker may be able to 3098 3099 simultaneously prevent legitimate access to a service and to attack the service by another 3100 means 3101 A variation of the DoS attack is the Distributed Denial of Service (DDoS) attack. In a DDoS attack 3102 the attacker uses multiple agents to the attack the target. In some circumstances this can be 3103 extremely difficult to counteract effectively. Working Draft 07 11 May 2012 soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. Standards Track Work Product Page 92 of 123

- 3104One of the features of a DoS attack is that it does not require valid interactions to be effective:3105responding to invalid messages also takes resources and that may be sufficient to cripple the3106target.
- 3107 Replay attack
- 3108In a replay attack, the attacker captures the message traffic during a legitimate interaction and3109then replays part of it to the target. The target is persuaded that a similar transaction to the3110previous one is being repeated and it responds as though it were a legitimate interaction.
- 3111A replay attack may not require that the attacker understand any of the individual3112message communications; the attacker may have different objectives (for example attempting to
- 3113 predict how the target would react to a particular request).

#### 3114 False repudiation

- 3115In false repudiation, a user completes a normal transaction and then later attempts to deny that3116the transaction occurred. For example, a customer may use a service to buy a book using a credit3117card; then, when the book is delivered, refuse to pay the credit card bill claiming that someone
- 3118 *else* must have ordered the book.

### 3119 5.2.4 Security Responses

Security goals are never absolute: it is not possible to guarantee 100% confidentiality, non-repudiation,
 etc. However, a well designed and implemented security response model can ensure acceptable levels of
 security risk. For example, using a well-designed cipher to encrypt messages may make the cost of

3123 breaking communications so great and so lengthy that the information obtained is valueless.

3124 Performing threat assessments, devising mitigation strategies, and determining acceptable levels of risk

- are the foundation for an effective process to mitigation threats in a cost-effective way.<sup>10</sup> The choice in
- 3126 hardware and software to realize a SOA implementation will be a basis for threat assessments and
- 3127 mitigation strategies. The stakeholders of a specific SOA implementation should determine acceptable
- 3128 levels of risk based on threat assessments and the cost of mitigating those threats.

### 3129 5.2.4.1 Privacy Enforcement

3130 The most efficient mechanism to assure confidentiality is the encryption of information. Encryption is

- 3131 particularly important when messages must cross trust boundaries; especially over the Internet. Note that 3132 encryption need not be limited to the content of messages: it is possible to obscure even the existence of 3133 messages themselves through encryption and 'white noise' generation in the communications channel.
- The specifics of encryption are beyond the scope of this architecture. However, we are concerned about how the connection between privacy-related policies and their enforcement is made.
- The second second
- A policy enforcement point for enforcing privacy may take the form of an automatic function to encrypt
   messages as they leave a trust boundary; or perhaps simply ensuring that such messages are suitably
   encrypted.
- Any policies relating to the level of encryption being used would then apply to these centralized messaging functions.

### 3141 5.2.4.2 Integrity Protection

- 3142 To protect against message tampering or inadvertent message alteration, and to allow the receiver of a
- 3143 message to authenticate the sender, messages may be accompanied by a digital signature. Digital

Comment [PFB102]: Issue 141

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>10</sup> In practice, there are perceptions of security from all participants regardless of ownership boundaries. Satisfying security policy often requires asserting sensitive information about the message initiator. The perceptions of this participant about information privacy may be more important than actual security enforcement within the SOA ecosystem for this stakeholder.

signatures provide a means to detect if signed data has been altered. This protection can also extend to
 authentication and non-repudiation of a sender.

A common way a digital signature is generated is with the use of a private key that is associated with a public key and a digital certificate. The private key of some entity in the system is used to create a digital

3147 signature for some set of data. Other entities in the system can check the integrity of the signed data set

3149 via signature verification algorithms. Any changes to the data that was signed will cause signature

3150 verification to fail, which indicates that integrity of the data set has been compromised.

3151 A party verifying a digital signature must have access to the public key that corresponds to the private key

3152 used to generate the signature. A digital certificate contains the public key of the owner, and is itself

3153 protected by a digital signature created using the private key of the issuing Certificate Authority (CA).

### 3154 5.2.4.3 Message Replay Protection

To protect against replay attacks, messages may contain information that can be used to detect replayed messages. The simplest requirement to prevent replay attacks is that each message that is ever sent is

3157 unique. For example, a message may contain a message ID, a timestamp, and the intended destination.

By storing message IDs, and comparing each new message with the store, it becomes possible to verify whether a given message has been received before (and therefore should be discarded).

3160 The timestamp may be included in the message to help check for message freshness. Messages that

arrive after their message ID could have been cleared (after receiving the same message some time

previously) may also have been replayed. A common means for representing timestamps is a useful part
 of an interoperable replay detection mechanism.

The destination information is used to determine if the message was misdirected or replayed. If the replayed message is sent to a different endpoint than the destination of the original message, the replay

3166 could go undetected if the message does not contain information about the intended destination.

3167 In the case of messages that are replies to prior messages, it is also possible to include seed information

in the prior messages that is randomly and uniquely generated for each message that is sent out. A

3169 replay attack can then be detected if the reply does not embed the random number that corresponds to

## 3170 the original message.

### 3171 5.2.4.4 Auditing and Logging

3172 False repudiation involves a participant denying that it authorized a previous interaction. An effective

3173 strategy for responding to such a denial is to maintain careful and complete logs of interactions that can 3174 be used for auditing purposes. The more detailed and comprehensive an audit trail is, the less likely it is 3175 that a false repudiation would be successful.

2470 The countermodely accurate that the new repudiction testic (a g. digital signatures) is not

3176 The countermeasures assume that the non-repudiation tactic (e.g. digital signatures) is not undermined 3177 itself. For example, if private key is stolen and used by an adversary, even extensive logging cannot

3178 assist in rejecting a false repudiation.

3179 Unlike many of the security responses discussed here, it is likely that the scope for automation in

3180 rejecting a repudiation attempt is limited in the immediate future to careful logging.

### 3181 5.2.4.5 Graduated engagement

3182 The key to managing and responding to DoS attacks is to be careful in the use of resources when

3183 responding to interaction. Put simply, a system has a choice to respond to a communication or to ignore

3184 it. In order to avoid vulnerability to DoS attacks a service provider should be careful not to commit

3185 resources beyond those implied by the current state of interactions; this permits a graduation in

commitment by the service provider that mirrors any commitment on the part of service consumers andattackers alike.

## 3188 5.2.5 Architectural Implications of SOA Security

Providing SOA security in an ecosystem of governed services has the following implications on the policy support and the distributed nature of mechanisms used to assure SOA security:

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Page 94 of 123

Comment [KJL103]: Issue 275

3191	<ul> <li>Security expressed through policies has the same architectural implications as described in</li> </ul>
3192	Section 4.4.3 for policies and contracts architectural implications.
3193	Security policies require mechanisms to support security description administration, storage, and
3194	distribution.
3195	<ul> <li>Service descriptions supporting security policies should:</li> </ul>
3196	<ul> <li>have a meta-structure sufficiently rich to support security policies;</li> </ul>
3197	<ul> <li>be able to reference one or more security policy artifacts;</li> </ul>
3198	<ul> <li>have a framework for resolving conflicts between security policies.</li> </ul>
3199	The mechanisms that make-up the execution context in secure SOA-based systems should:
3200	<ul> <li>provide protection of the confidentiality and integrity of message exchanges;</li> </ul>
3201	<ul> <li>be distributed so as to provide centralized or decentralized policy-based identification,</li> </ul>
3202	authentication, and authorization;
3203	<ul> <li>ensure service availability to consumers;</li> </ul>
3204	<ul> <li>be able to scale to support security for a growing ecosystem of services;</li> </ul>
3205	<ul> <li>be able to support security between different communication technologies;</li> </ul>
3206	Common security services include:
3207	<ul> <li>services that abstract encryption techniques;</li> </ul>
3208	<ul> <li>services for auditing and logging interactions and security violations;</li> </ul>
3209	<ul> <li>services for identification;</li> </ul>
3210	<ul> <li>services for authentication;</li> </ul>
3211	<ul> <li>services for authorization;</li> </ul>
3212	<ul> <li>services for intrusion detection and prevention;</li> </ul>
3213	<ul> <li>services for availability including support for quality of service specifications and metrics.</li> </ul>

## 3214 5.3 Management Model

### 3215 5.3.1 Management

3222

3223 3224

3228

3229

3230

3231

Management is a process of controlling resources in accordance with the policies and principles definedby Governance.

3218 There are three separate but linked domains of interest within the management of a SOA ecosystem:

- the management and support of the resources that are involved in any complex structures of which SOA ecosystems are excellent examples;
   the promulgation and enforcement of the policies and service contracts agreed to by the
  - the promulgation and enforcement of the policies and service contracts agreed to by the stakeholders in the SOA ecosystem;
    - the management of the relationships of the participants both to each other and to the services that they use and offer.
- There are many artifacts related to management. Historically, systems management capabilities have
   been organized by the "FCAPS" functions (based on ITU-T Rec. M.3400 (02/2000), "TMN Management
   Functions"):
  - fault management,
  - configuration management,
  - account management,
  - performance and security management.

The primary task of the functional groups is to concentrate on maintaining systems in a trusted, active,and accessible state.

3234 In the context of the SOA ecosystem, we see many possible resources that may require management 3235 such as services, service descriptions, service contracts, policies, roles, relationships, security, people 3236 and systems that implement services and infrastructure elements. In addition, given the ecosystem 3237 nature, it is also potentially necessary to manage the business relationships between participants.

3238 Successful operation of a SOA ecosystem requires trust among the stakeholders and between them and 3239 the SOA-based system elements. In contrast, regular systems in technology are not necessarily operated 3240 or used in an environment requiring trust before the stakeholders make use of the system. Indeed, many

3241 of these systems exist in hierarchical management structures, within which use may be mandated by

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Page 95 of 123

legal requirement, executive decision, or good business practice in furthering the business' strategy. The
 pre-condition of trust in the SOA ecosystem is rooted both in the principles of service orientation and in
 the distributed, authoritative ownership of independent services. Even for hierarchical management
 structures applied to a SOA ecosystem, the service in use should have a contractual basis rather than
 solely being mandated.

Trust may be established through agreements/contracts, policies, or implicitly through observation of repeated interactions with others. Explicit trust is usually accompanied by formalized documents suitable for management. Implicit trust adds fragility to the management of a SOA ecosystem because failure to maintain consistent and predictable interactions will undermine the trust between participants and within the ecosystem as a whole.

3252 Management in a SOA ecosystem is thus concerned with management taking actions that will establish 3253 the condition of trust that must be present before engaging in service interactions. These concerns should 3254 largely be handled within the governance of the ecosystem. The policies, agreements, and practices defined through governance provide the boundaries within which management operates and for which 3255 3256 management must provide enforcement and feedback. However, governance alone cannot foresee all 3257 circumstances but must offer sufficient guidance where agreement between all stakeholders cannot be 3258 reached. Management in these cases must be flexible and adaptable to handle unanticipated conditions 3259 without unnecessarily breaking trust relationships.

3260 Service management is the process - manual, automated, or a combination - of proactively monitoring 3261 and controlling the behavior of a service or a set of services. Service management operates under constraints attributed to the business and social context. Specific policies may be used to govern cross-3262 3263 boundary relationships. Managing solutions based on such policies (and that may be used across 3264 ownership boundaries) raises issues that are not typically present when managing a service within a 3265 single ownership domain. Care is therefore required in managing a service when the owner of the 3266 service, the provider of the service, the host of the service and mediators to the service may all belong to different stakeholders. 3267

- 3268 Cross-boundary service management takes place in, at least, the following situations:
- using combinations of services that belong to different ownership domains
  - using of services that mediate between ownership domains
  - sharing monitoring and reporting means and results.

These situations are particularly important in ecosystems that are highly decentralized, in which the participants interact as peers as well as in the "master-servant" mode.

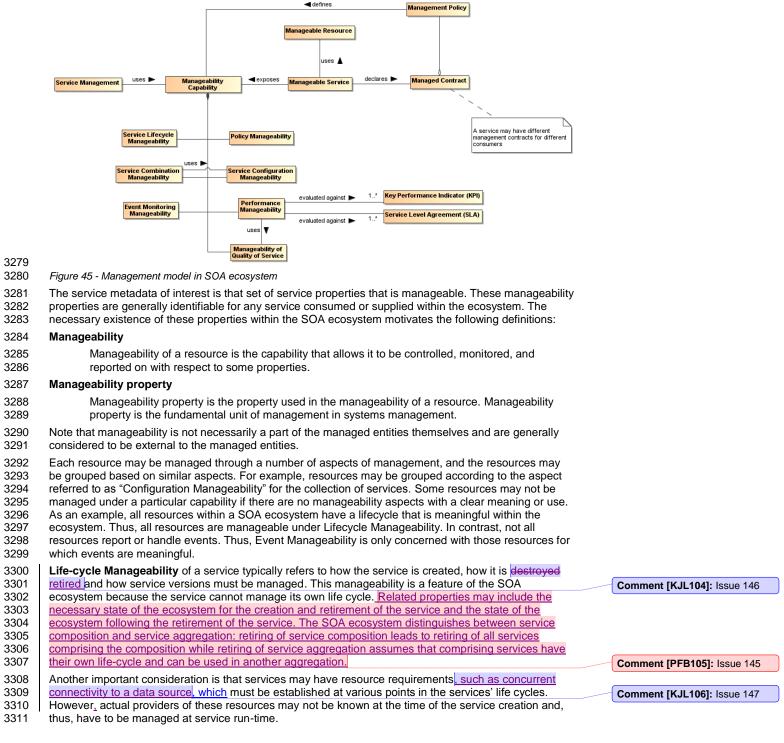
The management model shown in Figure 45 conveys how the SOA paradigm applies to managing services. Services management operates via service metadata, such as properties associated with

service lifecycles and with service use, which are typically collected in or accessed through the servicedescription.

3278

3270

3271



soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 97 of 123

3312 3313 3314 3315 3316 3316 3317	<b>Combination Manageability</b> of a service addresses management of service characteristics that allow for creating and changing combinations in which the service participates or that the service combines itself. Known models of such combinations are aggregations and compositions. Examples of patterns of combinations are choreography and orchestration. In cases of business collaboration, combination of services appears as cooperation of services. Combination Manageability drives implementation of the Service Composability Principle of service orientation.	Comment [PFB107]: Issue 145
3318 3319 3320	Service combination manageability resonates with the methodology of process management. Combination Manageability may be applied at different phases of service creation and execution and, in some cases, can utilize Configuration Manageability.	
3321 3322 3323	Service combinations typically contribute the most in delivering business values to the stakeholders. Managing service combinations is the one of the most important tasks and features of the SOA ecosystem.	
3324 3325	<b>Configuration Manageability</b> of a service allows managing the identity of and the interactions among internal elements of the service, for example, a use of data encryption for internal inter-component	
3326	communication in particular deployment conditions. Also, Configuration Manageability correlates with the	Comment [PFB108]: Issue 145
3327 3328 3329	management of service versions and configuration of the deployment of new services into the ecosystem. Configuration Management differs from the Combination Manageability in the scope and scale of manageability, and addresses lower level concerns than the architectural combination of services.	
3330 3331 3332 3333	<b>Event Monitoring Manageability</b> allows managing the categories of events of interest related to services and reporting recognized events to the interested stakeholders. Such events may be the ones that trigger service invocations as well as execution of particular functionality provided by the service, For example, an execution of a set of financial market risk services, which implements choreography pattern, may be	
3334	started if certain financial event occurs in a stock exchange.	Comment [PFB109]: Issue 145
3335 3336 3337 3338 3339	Event Monitoring Manageability is a key lower-level manageability aspect, in which the service provider and associated stakeholders are interested. Monitored events may be internal or external to the SOA ecosystem. For example, a disaster in the oil industry, which is outside the SOA ecosystem of the Insurer, can trigger the service's functionality that is responsible for immediate or constant monitoring of oil prices in the oil trading exchanges and, respectively, modify the premium paid by the insured oil companies.	
3340 3341 3342 3343 3344	<b>Performance Manageability</b> of a service allows controlling the service results, shared and sharable real world effects against the business goals and objectives of the service. This manageability assumes monitoring of the business performance as well as the management of this monitoring itself. Performance Manageability includes business and technical performance manageability through a performance criteria set, such as business key performance indicators (KPI) and service-level agreements (SLA).	
3345 3346 3347 3348 3349	The performance business- and technical-level characteristics of the service should be known from the service contract. The service provider and consumer must be able to monitor and measure these characteristics or be informed about the results measured by a third party. An example of such monitoring would be when the comparison of service performance results against an SLA is not satisfactory to the consumer, and as a consequence, the consumerit may replace the service by a service from a	
3350	competitor.	Comment [PFB110]: Issue 145
3351 3352	Performance Manageability is the instrument for providing compliance of the service with its service contracts. Performance Manageability utilizes Manageability of Quality of Service.	
3353 3354 3355	<b>Manageability of Quality of Service</b> deals with management of service non-functional characteristics that may be of significant value to the service consumers and other stakeholders in the SOA ecosystem. A classic example- of this is managing bandwidth offerings associated with a service.	
3356 3357   3358 3359	Manageability of quality of service assumes that the properties associated with service qualities are monitored during the service execution. Results of monitoring may be <u>challenged_compared</u> against <u>an</u> SLA or a KPI, which results in the continuous validation of how the service contract is preserved by the service provider.	
3360 3361 3362 3363	<b>Policy Manageability</b> allows additions, changes and replacements of the policies associated with a resource in the SOA ecosystem. The ability to manage those policies (such as promulgating policies, retiring policies and ensuring that policy decision points and enforcement points are current) enables the ecosystem to apply policies and <i>evaluate</i> the results.	

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 98 of 123 3364 The capability to manage, i.e. use a particular manageability, requires policies from governance to be 3365 translated into detailed rules and regulations which are measured and monitored providing corresponding

3366 feedback for enforcement. At the same time, the execution of a management capability MUST adhere to certain policies governing the management itself. For example, a management has to enforce and control 3367 policies of compliance with particular industry regulation while the management is obliged by another 3368 3369 policy to report on the compliance status periodically.

3370 Management of SOA ecosystem recognizes the manageability challenge and requires manageability

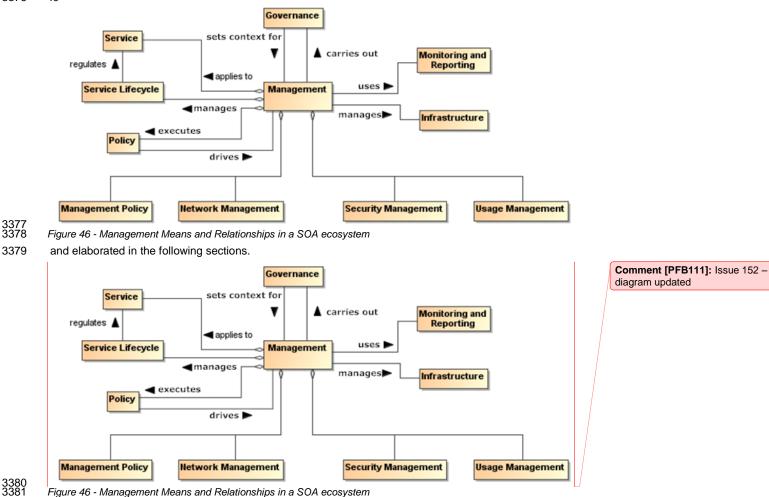
3371 properties to be considered for all aforementioned manageability cases. In the following sub-sections, we

3372 describe how these properties are used in the management as well as some relationships between

management and other components of SOA ecosystem. 3373

#### 5.3.2 Management Means and Relationships 3374

3375 A minimal set of management issues for the SOA ecosystem is shown in Figure 3376 46



3380 3381

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

11 May 2012 Page 99 of 123

### 3382 5.3.2.1 Management Policy

The management of resources within the SOA ecosystem may be governed by management policies. In a deployed SOA-based solution, it may well be that different aspects of the management of a given service are managed by different management services. For example, the life-cycle management of services often involves managing service versions. Managing quality of service is often very specific to the service itself; for example, quality of service attributes for a video streaming service are quite different to those for a banking system.

3389 Additional concepts of management also apply to IT management.

#### 3390 5.3.2.2 Network Management

3391Network management deals with the maintenance and administration of large scale physical networks3392such as computer networks and telecommunication networks. Specifics of the networks may affect

- 3393 service interactions from performance and operational perspectives.
- 3394 Network and related system management execute a set of functions required for controlling, planning,
- deploying, coordinating, and monitoring the distributed services in the SOA ecosystem. However, while
- 3396 recognizing their importance, the specifics of systems management or network management are out of 3397 scope for this Reference Architecture Foundation.

#### 3398 5.3.2.3 Security Management

- Security Management includes identification of roles, permissions, access rights, and policy attributes
   defining security boundaries and events that may trigger a security response.
- 3401 Security management within a SOA ecosystem is essential to maintaining the trust relationships between
- 3402 participants residing in different ownership domains. Security management must consider not just the
- internal properties related to interactions between participants but ecosystem properties that preserve the
   integrity of the ecosystem from external threats.

### 3405 5.3.2.4 Usage Management

3409

3410

3411

3412 3413

3406 Usage Management is concerned with how resources are used, including:

- how the resource is accessed, who is using the resource, and the state of the resource (access properties);
  - controlling or shaping demand for resources to optimize the overall operation of the ecosystem (demand properties);
    - assigning costs to the use of resources and distributing those cost assignments to the participants in an appropriate manner (financial properties).
- 3414 5.3.3 Management and Governance
- 3415 The primary role of governance in the context of a SOA ecosystem is to foster an atmosphere of 3416 predictability, trust, and efficiency, and it accomplishes this by allowing the stakeholders to negotiate and 3417 set the key policies that govern the running of the SOA-based solution. Recall that in an ecosystem 3418 perspective, the goal of governance is less to have complete fine-grained control but more to enable the 3419 individual participants to work together.
- 3420 Policies for a SOA ecosystem will tend to focus on the rules of engagement between participants; for
- 3421 example, what kinds of interactions are permissible, how disputes are resolved, etc. While governance
- 3422 may primarily focus on setting policies, management will focus on the realization and enforcement of 3423 policies. Effective management in the SOA ecosystem requires an ability for governance to understand
- 3423 policies. Effective management in the SOA ecosystem requires an ability for governance to understar 3424 the consequences of its policies, guidelines, and principles, and to adjust those as needed when
- 3425 inconsistencies or ambiguity become evident from the operation of the management functions. This
- 3426 understanding and adjustment must be facilitated by the results of management and so the mechanisms
- 3427 for providing feedback from management into governance must exist.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	I

Comment [KJL112]: Issue 153

11 May 2012 Page 100 of 123 3428 Governance operates via specialized activities and, thus, should be managed itself. Governance policies

are included in the Governance Framework and Processes, and driven by the enterprise business model,

3430 business objectives and strategies. Where corporate management policies exist, these are usually guided 3431 and directed by the corporate executives. In peer relationships, governance policies are set by either an

external entity and accepted by the peers or by the peers themselves. This creates the appropriate

authoritative level for the policies used for the management of the Governance Framework and

3434 Processes. Management to operationalize governance controls the life-cycle of the governing policies,

3435 including procedures and processes, for modifying the Governance Framework and Processes.

### 3436 5.3.4 Management and Contracts

### 3437 5.3.4.1 Management for Contracts and Policies

As we noted above, management can often be viewed as the application of contracts and individual policies to ensure the smooth running of the SOA ecosystem. Policies and service contracts specify the service characteristics that have to be monitored, analyzed and managed. These also play an important role as the guiding constraints for management, as well as being artifacts (e.g., policy and contractual documents) that also need to be managed.

### 3443 5.3.4.2 Contracts

As described in sections "Participation in a SOA Ecosystem view" and "Realization of a SOA Ecosystem
 view", there are several types of contractual information in the SOA ecosystem. From the management
 perspective, three basic types of the contractual information relate to:

- relationship between service provider and consumer;
- communication with the service;
- control of the quality of the service execution.

3450 When a consumer prepares to interact with a service, the consumer and the service provider must come 3451 to an agreement on the service features and characteristics that will be provided by the service and made 3452 available to the consumer. This agreement is known as a service contract.

#### 3453 Service Contract

3447

3448

3449

3457

3458

3459

3460

- An implicit or explicit documented agreement between the service consumer and service provider
  about the use of the service based on
  the commitment by a service provider to provide service functionality and results consistent
  - the commitment by a service provider to provide service functionality and results consistent with identified real world effects and
  - the commitment by a service consumer to interact with the service per specific means and per specified policies,
  - where both consumer and provider actions are in the manner described in the service description.

3461 The service description provides the basis for the service contract and, in some situations, may be used as an implicit default service contract. In addition, the service description may set mandatory aspects of a 3462 service contract, e.g. for security services, or may specify acceptable alternatives. As an example of 3463 alternatives, the service description may identify which versions of a vocabulary will be recognized, and 3464 3465 the specifics of the contract are satisfied when the consumer uses one of the alternatives. Another 3466 alternative could have a consumer identify a policy they require be satisfied, e.g. a standard privacy policy 3467 on handling personal information, and a provider that is prepared to accept a policy request would indicate acceptance as part of the service contract by continuing with the interaction. In each of these 3468 3469 cases, the actions of the participants are consistent with an implicit service contract without the existence 3470 of a formal agreement between the participants. 3471 In the case of business services, it is anticipated that the service contract may take an explicit form and

- the agreement between business consumer and business service provider is formalized. Formalization
- 3473 requires up-front interactions between service consumer and service provider. In many business
- 3474 interactions, especially between business organizations within or across corporate boundaries, a
- 3475 consumer needs a contractual assurance from the provider or wants to explicitly indicate choices among

 3476
 alternatives, e.g., only use a subset of the business functionality offered by the service and pay a prorated

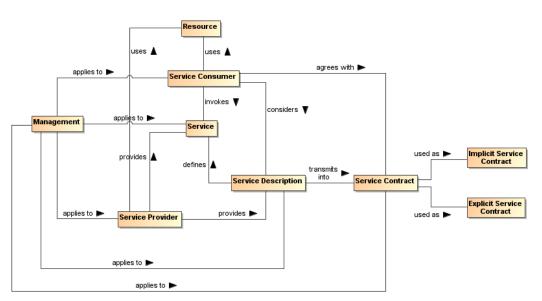
 3477
 cost.

 soa-raf-v1.0-wd07
 Working Draft 07

 11 May 2012

Page 101 of 123

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.



3479

#### 3480 Figure 47 - Management of the service interaction

3481 Consequently, an implicit service contract is an agreement (1) on the consumer side with the terms, 3482 conditions, features and interaction means specified in the service description "as is" or (2) a selection 3483 from alternatives that are made available through mechanisms included in the service description, and 3484 neither of these require any a priori interactions between the service consumer and the service provider. 3485 For example, a browser interface may display a checked box indicating the consumer agrees to accept 3486 future advertisement; the consumer can uncheck the box to indicate advertisements should not be sent. 3487 An explicit service contract always requires a form of interaction between the service consumer and the service provider prior to the service invocation. This interaction may regard the choice or selection of the 3488 3489 subset of the elements of the service description or other alternatives introduced through the formal 3490 agreement process that would be applicable to the interaction with the service and affect related joint 3491 action. 3492 Any form of explicit contract couples the service consumer and provider. While explicit contracts may be 3493 necessary or desirable in some cases, such as in supply chain management, commerce often uses a mix 3494 of implicit and explicit contracts, and a service provider may offer (via service description) a conditional 3495 shift from implicit to explicit contract. For example, Twitter offers an implicit contract on the use of its APIs 3496 to any application with the limit on the amount of service invocations: if the application needs to use more

invocations, one has to enter into the explicit fee-based contract with the provider. A case where an
implicit contract transforms into an explicit contract may be illustrated when one buys a new computer and
it does not work. The buyer returns the computer for repair under the manufacturer's warranty as stated
by an implicit purchase contract. However, if the repair does not fix the problem and the seller offers an
upgraded model in replacement, the buyer may agree to an explicit contract that limits the rights of the
buyer to make the explicit agreement public.

Control of the quality of the service execution, often represented as a service level agreement (SLA), is performed by service monitoring systems and includes both technical and operational business controls. SLA is a part of the service contract and, because of the individual nature of such contracts, may vary from one service contract to another, even for the same consumer. Typically, a particular SLA in the service contract is a concrete instance of the SLA declared in the service description.

3508 Management of the service contracts is based on management policies that may be mentioned in the 3509 service description and in the service contracts. Management of the service contracts is mandatory for 3510 consumer relationship management. In the case of explicit service contracts, the contracts have to be

3511 created, stored, maintained, reviewed/controlled and archived/destroyed as needed. All the activities are

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Page 102 of 123

Comment [KJL113]: Issue 158

3478

- management concerns. Explicit service contracts may be stored in specialized repositories that provide
   appropriate level of security.
- 3514 Management of the service interfaces is based on several management policies that regulate
- availability of interfaces specified in the service contracts,
- accessibility of interfaces,
- procedures for interface changes,
- interface versions as well as the versions of all parts of the interfaces,
- traceability of the interfaces and their versions back to the service description document.
- Management of the SLA is integral to the management of service monitoring and operational service behavior at run-time. An SLA usually enumerates service characteristics and expected performances of the service. Since an SLA carries the connotation of a "promise", monitoring is needed to know if the promise is being kept. Existence of an SLA itself does not guarantee that the consumer will be provided with the service level specified in the service contract.
- 3525 The use of an SLA in a SOA ecosystem can be wider than just an agreement on technical performances.
- 3526 An SLA may contain remedies for situations where the promised service cannot be maintained, or the
- 3527 real world effect cannot be achieved due to developments subsequent to the agreement. A service
- consumer that acts accordingly to realize the real world effect may be compensated for the breach of the
   SLA if the effect is not realized.
- 3530 Management of the SLA includes, among others, policies to change, update, and replace the SLA. This
- aspect concerns service Execution Context because the business logic associated with a defined
- 3532 interface may differ in different Execution Contexts and affect the overall performance of the service.

### 3533 5.3.4.3 Policies

"Although provision of management capabilities enables a service to become manageable, the extent and degree of permissible management are defined in management policies that are associated with the services. Management policies are used to define the obligations for, and permissions to, managing the service" [WSA]. Management policies, in essence, are the realization of governing rules and regulations. As such, some management policies may target services while other policies may target the management of the services.

In practice, a policy without any means of enforcing it is vacuous. In the case of management policy, we
 rely on a management infrastructure to realize and enforce management policy.

### 3542 5.3.4.4 Service Description and Management

The service description identifies several management objects such as a set of service interfaces and related set of SLAs. Service behavioral characteristics and performances specified in the SLA depend on the interface type and its Execution Context. In the service description, a service consumer can find references to management policies, SLA metrics, and the means of accessing measured values that together increase assurance in the service quality. At the same time, service description is an artifact that needs to be managed.

In the SOA ecosystem, the service description is the assembled information that describes the service but
 it may be reported or displayed in different presentations. While each separate version of the service has
 one and only one service description, different categories of service consumers may focus their interests
 on different aspects of the service description. Thus, the same service description may be displayed not
 only in different languages but also with different cultural and professional accents in the content.

New service description may be issued to reflect changes and update in the service. If the change in the service does not affect its service description, the new service version may have the same service description as the previous version except for the updated version identifier. For example, a service description may stay the same if bugs were fixed in the service. However, if a change in the service influences any aspects of the service quality that can affect the real world effect resulting from

intractions with the service, the service description MUST reflect this change even if there are no
 changes to the service interface.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 103 of 123 Management of the service description as well as of the explicit service contracts is essential for delivery
 of the service to the consumer satisfaction. This management can also prevent business problems rooted
 in poor communication between the service consumers and the service providers.

Thus, management of service description contains, among others, management of the service description presentations, the life-cycles of the service descriptions, service description distribution practices and storage of the service descriptions and related service contracts. Collections of service descriptions in the enterprise may manifest a need for specialized registries and/or repositories. Depending on the enterprise policies, an allocation of purposes and duties of registries and repositories may vary but this topic is

3569 beyond the current scope.

### 3570 5.3.5 Management for Monitoring and Reporting

3571 The successful application of management relies on the monitoring and reporting aspects of management to enable the control aspect. Monitoring in the context of management consists of measuring values of 3572 managed aspects and evaluating that measurement in relationship to some expectation. Monitoring in a 3573 SOA ecosystem is enabled through the use of mechanisms by resources for exposing managed aspects. 3574 3575 In the SOA framework, this mechanism may be a service for obtaining the measurement. Alternatively, the measurement may be monitored by means of event generation containing updated values of the 3576 3577 managed aspect. 3578 Approaches to monitoring may use a polling strategy in which the measurements are requested from

resources in periodic intervals, in a pull strategy in which the measurements are requested from

3580 resources at random times, or in a push strategy in which the measurements are supplied by the resource

3581 without request. The push strategy can be used in a periodic update approach or in an "update on

- change" approach. Management services must be capable of handling these different approaches tomonitoring.
- 3584 Reporting is the complement to monitoring. Where monitoring is responsible for obtaining measurements, reporting is responsible for distributing those measurements to interested stakeholders. The separation 3585 3586 between monitoring and reporting is made to include the possibility that data obtained through monitoring 3587 might not be used until an event impacting the ecosystem occurs or the measurement requires further 3588 processing to be useful. In the SOA framework, reporting is provided using services for requesting 3589 measurement reports. These reports may consist of raw measurement data, formatted collections of data, 3590 or the results of analysis performed on measurement data from collections of different managed aspects. 3591 Reporting is also used to support logging and auditing capabilities, where the reporting mechanisms
- 3592 create log or audit entries.

## 3593 5.3.6 Management for Infrastructure

All of the properties, policies, interactions, resources, and management are only possible if a SOA

- ecosystem infrastructure provides support for managed capabilities. Each managed capability imposes different requirements on the capabilities supplied by the infrastructure in SOA ecosystem and requires
- 3597 that those capabilities be usable as services or at the very least be interoperable.
- 3598 While not providing a full list of infrastructural elements of a SOA ecosystem, we list some examples here:
- 3599 1. Registries and repositories for services, policies, and related descriptions and contracts
- 3600
   2. Synchronous and asynchronous communication channels for service interactions (e.g., network, e-mail, message routing with ability of mediating transport protocols, etc.)
- 3602 3. Recovery capabilities
- 3603 4. Security controls

3606

3607

#### 3604 A SOA ecosystem infrastructure, enabling service management, should also support:

- 3605 1. Management enforcement and control means
  - 2. Monitoring and SLA validation controls
  - 3. Testing and Reporting capabilities
- 3608 The combination of manageability <u>properties</u>, <u>related</u> capabilities and infrastructure elements constitutes a certain level of SOA management maturity. While several maturity models exist, this topic is out of the scope of the current document.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07	11 May 2012
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.	Page 104 of 123

3611	5.3.7 Architectural Implication of the SOA Management
3612 3613 3614	SOA Management is one of the fundamental elements of the SOA ecosystem; it impacts all aspects of a service life-cycle, service activities and actions, and a service usage. The key choices that must be made centre in management means, methods and manageability properties:
3615	<ul> <li>Every resource of the SOA ecosystem and, particularly, services MUST provide manageability</li></ul>
3616	properties
3617	<ul> <li>The set of manageability properties SHOULD include as minimum such properties as life-</li></ul>
3618	cycle, combination, configuration, event monitoring, performance, quality of services, and
3619	policy manageability
3620	<ul> <li>Combinations of manageability properties MAY be used in different management</li></ul>
3621	methods and tools
3622	<ul> <li>Manageability properties and applicable policies SHOULD be appropriately described in the</li></ul>
3623	services description and contracts
3624	<ul> <li>Management processes SHOULD operate (control, enforce and provide a feedback to the</li></ul>
3625	governance) via policies, agreements/contracts, and practices defined through governance
3626 3627 3628 3629 3630 3631 3632 3633 3634 3635 3636	<ul> <li>Management functions and information MAY be realized as services and, thus, MUST be managed itself</li> <li>Management in the cases, where sufficient guidance is unavailable or for which agreement between all stakeholders cannot be reached, MUST be flexible and adaptable to handle unanticipated conditions without unnecessarily breaking trust relationships</li> <li>Management SHOULD engage a monitoring mechanism to enable manageability. Monitoring HAS to include         <ul> <li>Access mechanisms to collected SLA metrics</li> <li>Assessment mechanisms to compare metrics against policies and contracts</li> </ul> </li> <li>Results of monitoring and reporting MUST be made accessible to participants in different ownership domains.</li> </ul>

# 3637 5.4 SOA Testing Model

Testing for SOA combines the typical challenges of software testing and certification with the additional 3638 3639 needs of accommodating the distributed nature of the resources, the greater access of a more 3640 unbounded consumer population, and the desired flexibility to create new solutions from existing 3641 components over which the solution developer has little if any control. The purpose of testing is to 3642 demonstrate a required level of reliability, correctness, and effectiveness that enable prospective 3643 consumers to have adequate confidence in using a service. Adequacy is defined by the consumer based on the consumer's needs and context of use. Absolute correctness and completeness cannot be proven 3644 by testing; however, for SOA, it is critical for the prospective consumer to know what testing has been 3645 3646 performed, how it has been performed, and what were the results.

## 3647 5.4.1 Traditional Software Testing as Basis for SOA Testing

3648 SOA services are largely software artifacts and can leverage the body of experience that has evolved 3649 around software testing. [IEEE-829] specifies the basic set of software test documents while allowing 3650 flexibility for tailored use. Many testing frameworks are available but the SOA-RAF does not prescribe the 3651 use of any one in particular and choice will be driven by a framework that offers the right amount and 3652 level of testing. As such, the document structure can also provide guidance to SOA testing. Comment [PFB115]: Issue 299 3653 IEEE-829 covers test specification and test reporting through use of the following document types: Test plan documenting the scope (what is to be tested, both which entity and what features of the 3654 ٠ 3655 entity), the approach (how it is tested), and the needed resources (who does the testing, for how 3656 long), with details contained in the: Test design specification: features to be tested, test conditions (e.g. test cases, test procedures 3657 3658 needed) and expected results (criteria for passing test); entrance and exit criteria 3659 Test case specification: test data used for input and expected output •

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Working Draft 07 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 105 of 123 Comment [PFB114]: Issue 160

- Test procedure specification: steps required to run the test, including any set-up preconditions
- Test item transmittal to identify the test items being transmitted for testing
- 3662Test log to record what occurred during test, i.e. which tests run, who ran, what order, what<br/>happened
- Test incident report to capture any event that happened during test which requires further investigation
- 3666 Test summary as a management report summarizing test run and results, conclusions
- 3667 In summary, IEEE-829 captures (1) what was tested, (2) how it was tested, e.g. the test procedure used, 3668 and (3) the results of the test.

### 3669 5.4.1.1 Types of Testing

3670 There are numerous aspects of testing that, in total, work to establish that an entity is (1) built as required 3671 per policies and related specifications prescribed by the entity's owner, and (2) delivers the functionality 3672 required by its intended users. This is often referred to as verification and validation.

Policies, as described in Section 4.4, that are related to testing may prescribe but are not limited to the business processes to be followed, the standards with which an implementation must comply, and the qualifications of and restrictions on the users. In addition to the functional requirements prescribing what an entity does, there may also be non-functional performance and/or quality metrics that state how well the entity does it. The relation of these policies to SOA testing is discussed further below.

- The identification of policies is the purview of governance (section 5.1) and the assuring of compliance (including response to noncompliance) with policies is a matter for management (section 5.3).

### 3680 5.4.1.2 Range of Test Conditions

3681 Test conditions and expected responses are detailed in the test case specification. The test conditions 3682 should be designed to cover the areas for which the entity's response must be documented and may 3683 include:

nominal conditions

3684

3685

3686

3687

3688

3689

- boundaries and extremes of expected conditions
- breaking point where the entity has degraded below a certain level or has otherwise ceased effective functioning
- random conditions to investigate unidentified dependencies among combinations of conditions
   errors conditions to test error handling

3690The specification of how each of these conditions should be tested for SOA resources, including the3691infrastructure elements of the SOA ecosystem, is beyond the scope of this document but is an area that3692evolves along with operational SOA experience.

### 3693 5.4.1.3 Configuration Management of Test Artifacts

3694The test item transmittal provides an unambiguous identification of the entity being tested, thus3695REQUIRING that the configuration of the entity is appropriately tracked and documented. In addition, the3696test documents (such as those specified by IEEE-829) MUST also be under a documented and3697appropriately audited configuration management process, as should other resources used for testing. The3698description of each artifact would follow the general description model as discussed in section 4.1.1.1; in3699particular, it would include a version number for the artifact and reference to the documentation3700describing the versioning scheme from which the version number is derived.

## 3701 **5.4.2 Testing and the SOA Ecosystem**

3702 Testing of SOA artifacts for use in the SOA ecosystem differs from traditional software testing for several 3703 reasons. First, a highly touted benefit of SOA is to enable unanticipated consumers to make use of 3704 services for unanticipated purposes. Examples of this could include the consumer using a service for a 3705 result that was not considered the primary one by the provider, or the service may be used in combination 3706 with other services in a scenario that is different from the one considered when designing for the initial target consumer community. It is unlikely that a new consumer will push the services back to anything 3707 soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Working Draft 07 11 May 2012 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. Page 106 of 123 3708 resembling the initial test phase to test the new use, and thus additional paradigms for testing are

3709 necessary. Some testing may depend on the availability of test resources made available as a service

3710 outside the initial test community, while some testing is likely to be done as part of limited use in the operational setting. The potential responsibilities related to such "consumer testing" are discussed further 3711 3712 below.

3713 Secondly, in addition to consumers who interact with a service to realize the described real world effects, 3714 the developer community is also intended to be a consumer. In the SOA vision of reuse, the developer

3715 composes new solutions using existing services, where the existing services provides access to some

3716 desired real world effects that are needed by the new solution. The new solution is a consumer of the

existing services, enabling repeated interactions with the existing services playing the role of reusable 3717

- components. Note, those components are used at the locations where they individually reside and are not 3718
- 3719 typically duplicated for the new solution. The new solution may itself be offered as a SOA service, and a
- 3720 consumer of the service composition representing the new solution may be totally unaware of the 3721 component services being used. (See section 4.3.4 for further discussion on service compositions.)

3722 Another difference from traditional testing is that the distributed, unbounded nature of the SOA ecosystem

3723 makes it unlikely to have an isolated test environment that duplicates the operational environment. A

- 3724 traditional testing approach often makes use of a test system that is identical to the eventual operational
- system but isolated for testing. After testing is successfully completed, the tested entity would be migrated 3725 3726 to the operational environment, or the test environment may be delivered as part of the system to become
- 3727 operational. This is not feasible for the SOA ecosystem as a whole.

3728 SOA services must be testable in the environment and under the conditions that can be encountered in 3729 the operational SOA ecosystem. As the ecosystem is in a state of constant change, so some level of

3730 testing is continuous through the lifetime of the service, leveraging utility services used by the ecosystem

3731 infrastructure to monitor its own health and respond to situations that could lead to degraded

3732 performance. This implies the test resources must incorporate aspects of the SOA paradigm, and a

3733 category of services may be created to specifically support and enable effective monitoring and continuous testing for resources participating in the SOA ecosystem. 3734

3735 While SOA within an enterprise may represent a more constrained and predictable operational

3736 environment, the composability and unanticipated use aspects are highly touted within the enterprise. The 3737 expanded perspective on testing may not be as demanding within an enterprise but fuller consideration of the ecosystem enables the enterprise to be more responsive should conditions change. 3738

#### 5.4.3 Elements of SOA Testing 3739

3740 IEEE-829 identifies fundamental aspects of testing, and many of these should carry over to SOA testing: 3741 in particular, the identification of what is to be tested, how it is to be tested, and by whom the testing is to

3742 be done. While IEEE-829 identifies a suggested document tree, the availability of these documents in the 3743 SOA ecosystem is discussed below.

#### 3744 5.4.3.1 What is to be Tested

3745 The focus of this discussion is the SOA service. It is recognized that the infrastructure components of any SOA environment are likely to also be SOA services and, as such, falls under the same testing guidance. 3746 3747 Other resources that contribute to a SOA environment may not be SOA services, but are expected to 3748 satisfy the intent if not the letter of guidance presented here. Specific differences for such resources are 3749 as yet largely undefined and further elaboration is beyond the scope of the SOA-RAF.

3750 The following discussion often focuses on a singular SOA service but it is implicit that any service may be a composite of other services. As such, testing the functionality of a composite service may effectively be 3751

- 3752 testing an end-to-end business process that is being provided by the composite service. If new versions 3753
- are available for the component services, appropriate end-to-end testing of the composite may be 3754 required in order to verify that the composite functionality is still adequately provided. The level of
- 3755 required testing of an updated composite depends on policies of those providing the service, policies of
- 3756 those using the service, and mission criticality of those depending on the service results.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

11 May 2012 Page 107 of 123

The SOA service to be tested MUST be unambiguously identified as specified by its applicable
 configuration management scheme. Specifying such a scheme is beyond the scope of the SOA-RAF
 other than to say the scheme should be documented and itself under configuration management.

#### 3760 5.4.3.1.1 Origin of Test Requirements

3765

3766

3761 In the Service Description model (Figure 16), the aspects of a service that need to be described are:

- the service functionality and technical assumptions that underlie the functionality;
- the policies that describe conditions of use;
- the service interface that defines information exchange with the service;
  - service reachability that identifies how and where message exchange is to occur; and
  - metrics access for any participant to have information on how a service is performing.

3767 Service testing must provide adequate assurance that each of these aspects is operational as defined.

The information in the service description comes from different sources. The functionality is defined through whatever process identifies needs and the community for which these needs are addressed. The process may be ad hoc as serves the prospective service owner or strictly governed, but defining the functionality is an essential first step in development. It is also an early and ongoing focus of testing to ensure the service accurately reflects the described functionality and the described functionality accurately addresses the consumer needs.

3774 Policies define the conditions of development and conditions of use for a service and are typically

3775 specified as part of the governance process. Policies constraining service development, such as coding

- 3776 standards and best practices, require appropriate testing and auditing during development to ensure
- 3777 compliance. While the governance process identifies development policies, these are likely to originate
- 3778 from the technical community responsible for development activities. Policies that define conditions of use 3779 often define business practices that service owners and providers or those responsible for the SOA

infrastructure want followed. These policies are initially tested during service development and are

3781 continuously monitored during the operational lifetime of the service.

3782 The testing of the service interface and service reachability are often related but essentially reflect 3783 different motivations and needs. The service interface is specified as a joint product of the service owners 3784 and providers who define service functionality, the prospective consumer community, the service 3785 developer, and the governance process. The semantics of the information model must align with the 3786 semantics of those who consume the service in order for there to be meaningful exchange of information. 3787 The structure of the information is influenced by the consumer semantics and the requirements and 3788 constraints of the representation as interpreted by the service developer. The service process model that 3789 defines actions which can be performed against a service and any temporal dependencies derive from the defined functionality and may be influenced by the development process. Any of these constraints 3790

3791 may be identified and expressed as policy through the governance process.

Service reachability conditions are the purview of the service provider who identifies the service endpoint
 and the protocols recognized at the endpoint. These may be constrained by governance decisions on
 how endpoint addresses may be allocated and what protocols should be used.

While the considerations for defining the service interface derive from several sources, testing of the service interface is more straightforward and isolated in the testing process. At any point where the interface is modified or exposes a new resource, the message exchange should be monitored both to ensure the message reaches its intended destination and it is parsed correctly once received. Once an interface has been shown to function properly, it is unlikely to fail later unless something fundamental to the service changes.

The service interface is also tested when the service endpoint changes. Testing of the endpoint ensures message exchange can occur at the time of testing and the initial testing shows the interface is being processed properly at the new endpoint. Functioning of a service endpoint at one time does not guarantee it is functioning at another time, e.g. the server with the endpoint address may be down, making testing of service reachability a continual monitoring function through the life of the service's use of the endpoint. Also, while testing of the service endpoint is a necessary and most commonly noted part of the test regiment, it is not in itself sufficient to ensure the other aspects of testing discussed in this

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product

section.

3808

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 108 of 123 3809 Finally, governance is impossible without the collection of metrics against which service behavior can be 3810 assessed. Metrics are also a key indicator for consumers to decide if a service is adequate for their 3811 needs. For instance, the average response time or the recent availability can be determining factors even if there are no rules or regulations promulgated through the governance process against which these 3812 3813 metrics are assessed. The available metrics are a combination of those expected by the consumer community and those mandated through the governance process. The total set of metrics will evolve over 3814 time with SOA experience. Testing of the services that gather and provide access to the metrics will follow 3815 3816 testing as described in this section, but for an individual service, testing will ensure that the metrics 3817 access indicated in the service description is accurate. 3818 The individual test requirements highlight aspects of the service that testing must consider but testing must establish more than isolated behavior. The emphasis is the holistic results of interacting with the 3819

- service in the SOA environment. Recall that the execution context is the set of agreements between a
   consumer and a provider that define the conditions under which service interaction occurs. The
   agreements are expected to be predominantly the acceptance of the standard conditions as enumerated
   by the service provider, but it may include the identification of alternate conditions that will govern the
   interaction.
- For example, the provider may prefer a policy where it can sell the contact information of its consumers but will honor the request of a consumer to keep such information private. The identification of the alternate privacy policy is part of the execution context, and it is the application of and compliance with this policy that operational monitoring will attempt to measure. The collection of metrics showing this condition is indeed met when chosen is considered part of the ongoing testing of the service.

3830 Other variations in the execution context also require monitoring to ensure that different combinations of 3831 conditions perform together as desired. For example, if a new privacy policy takes additional resources to 3832 apply, this may affect quality of service and propagate other effects. These could not be tested during the 3833 original testing if the alternate policy did not exist at that time.

### 3834 5.4.3.1.2 Testing Against Non-Functional Requirements

Testing against non-functional requirements constitutes testing of business usability of the service. In a
 marketplace of services, non-functional characteristics may be the primary differentiator between services
 that produce essentially the same real world effects.

As noted in the previous section, non-functional characteristics are often associated with policies or other

terms of use and may be collected in service level contracts offered by the service providers. Non-

3840 functional requirements may also reflect the network and hardware infrastructure that support

communication with the service, and changes may impact quality of service. The service consumer and
 even the service provider may not be aware of all such infrastructure changes but the changes may

3843 manifest in shared states that impact the usability of the service.

3844 In general, a change in the non-functional requirements results in a change to the execution context, but 3845 as with any collection of information that constitutes a description, the execution context is unable to 3846 explicitly capture all non-functional requirements that may apply. A change in non-functional 3847 requirements, whether explicitly part of the execution context or an implicit contributor, may require retesting of the service even if its functionality and the implementation of the functionality has not 3848 3849 changed. Depending on the circumstances, retesting may require a formal recertifying of end-to-end behavior or more likely will be part of the continuous monitoring that applies throughout the service 3850 3851 lifetime.

### 3852 5.4.3.1.3 Testing Content and the Interests of Consumers

As noted in section 5.4.1.1, testing may involve verification of conformance with respect to policies and technical specifications and validation with respect to sufficiency of functionality to meet some prescribed use. It may also include demonstration of performance and quality aspects. For some of these items, such as demonstrating the business processes followed in developing the service or the use of standards in implementing the service, the testing or relevant auditing is done internal to the service development process and follows traditional software testing and quality assurance. If it is believed of value to potential consumers, information about such testing could be included in the service description. However, it is not

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Working Draft 07 Standards Track Work Product Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 109 of 123 required that all test or compliance artifacts be available to consumers, as many of the details tested maybe part of the opacity of the service implementation.

Some aspects of the service being tested will reflect directly on the real world effects realized through interaction with the service. In these cases, it is more likely that testing results will be directly relevant to potential consumers. For example, if the service was designed to correspond to certain elements of a business process or that a certain workflow is followed, testing should verify that the real world effects reflect that the business process or workflow were satisfactorily captured.

The testing may also need to demonstrate that specified conditions of use are satisfied. For example, policies may be asserted that require certain qualifications of or impose restrictions on the consumers who may interact with the service. The service testing must demonstrate that the service independently enforces the policies or it provides the required information exchanges with the SOA ecosystem so other resources can ensure the specified conditions.

3872 The completeness of the testing, both in terms of the features tested and the range of parameters for 3873 which response is tested, depends on the context of expected use: the more critical the use, the more 3874 complete the testing. There are always limits on the resources available for testing, if nothing else than 3875 the service must be available for use in a finite amount of time.

3876 This again emphasizes the need for adequate documentation to be available. If the original testing is very

thorough, it may be adequate for less demanding uses in the future. If the original testing was more
 constrained, then well-documented test results establish the foundation on which further testing can be
 defined and executed.

### 3880 5.4.3.2 How Testing is to be Done

Testing should follow well-defined methodologies and, if possible, should reuse test artifacts that have proven generally useful for past testing. For example, IEEE-829 notes that test cases are separated from test designs to allow for use in more than one design and to allow for reuse in other situations. In the SOA ecosystem, description of such artifacts (as with description of a service) enables awareness of the item and describes how the artifact may be accessed or used.

3886 As with traditional testing, the specific test procedures and test case inputs are important so the tests are 3887 unambiguously defined and entities can be retested in the future. Automated testing and regression 3888 testing may be more important in the SOA ecosystem in order to re-verify a service is still acceptable when incorporated in a new use. For example, if a new use requires the services to deal with input 3889 parameters outside the range of initial testing, the tests could be rerun with the new parameters. If the 3890 testing resources are available to consumers within the SOA ecosystem, the testing as designed by test 3891 3892 professionals could be consumed through a service accessed by consumers, and their results could 3893 augment those already in place. This is discussed further in the next section.

### 3894 5.4.3.3 Who Performs the Testing

3895 As with any software, the first line of testing is unit testing done by software developers. It is likely that 3896 initial testing will be done by those developing the software but may also be done independently by other 3897 developers. For SOA development, unit testing is likely confined to a development sandbox isolated from 3898 the SOA ecosystem.

- 3899 SOA testing will differ from traditional software testing in that testing beyond the development sandbox 3900 must incorporate aspects of the SOA ecosystem, and those doing the testing must be familiar with both
- 3900 must incorporate aspects of the SOA ecosystem, and those doing the testing must be raminal with both 3901 the characteristics and responses of the ecosystem and the tools, especially those available as services,
- to facilitate and standardize testing. Test professionals will know what level of assurance must be
- 3903 established as the exposure of the service to the ecosystem and ecosystem to the service increases
- towards operational status. These test professionals may be internal resources to an organization or may
   evolve as a separate discipline provided through external contracting.
- 3906 As noted above, it is unlikely that a complete duplicate of the SOA ecosystem will be available for isolated
- 3907 testing, and thus use of ecosystem resources will manifest as a transition process rather than a step
- 3908 change from a test environment to an operational one. This is especially true for new composite services 3909 that incorporate existing operational services to achieve the new functionality. The test professionals will
- 3910 need to understand the available resources and the ramifications of this transition.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07	Working Draft 07
Standards Track Work Product	Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

3911 As with current software development, a stage beyond work by test professionals will make use of a

3912 select group of typical users, commonly referred to as beta testers, to report on service response during

typical intended use. This establishes fitness by the consumers, providing final validation of previously
 verified processes, requirements, and final implementation.

In traditional software development, beta testing is the end of testing for a given version of the software. However, although the initial test phase can establish an appropriate level of confidence consistent with the designed use for the initial target consumer community, the operational service will exist in an

3918 evolving ecosystem, and later conditions of use may differ from those thought to be sufficient during the

initial testing. Thus, operational monitoring becomes an extension of testing through the service lifetime.
 This continuous testing will attempt to ensure that a service does not consume an inordinate amount of

ecosystem resources or display other behavior that degrades the ecosystem, but it will not undercover
 functional errors that may surface over time.

3923 As with any software, it is the responsibility of the consumers to consider the reasonableness of solutions 3924 in order to spot errors in either the software or the way the software is being used. This is especially 3925 important for consumers with unanticipated uses that may go beyond the original test conditions. It is 3926 unlikely the consumers will initiate a new round of formal testing unless the new use requires a significantly higher level of confidence in the service. Rather the consumer becomes a new extension to 3927 3928 the testing regiment. Obvious testing would include a sanity check of results during the new use. 3929 However, if the details of legacy testing are associated with the service through the service description 3930 and if testing resources are available through automated testing services, then the new consumers can 3931 rerun and extend previous testing to include the extended test conditions. If the test results are 3932 acceptable, these can be added to the documentation of previous results and become the extended basis 3933 for future decisions by prospective consumers on the appropriateness of the service. If the results are not acceptable or in some way questionable, the responsible party for the service or testing professionals can 3934 3935 be brought in to decide if remedial action is necessary.

## 3936 **5.4.3.4 How Testing Results are Reported**

For any SOA service, an accurate reporting of the testing a service has undergone and the results of the testing is vital to consumers deciding whether a service is appropriate for intended use. Appropriateness may be defined by a consumer organization and require specific test regiments culminating in a certification; appropriateness could be established by accepting testing and certifications that have been conferred by others.

3942 The testing and certification information should be identified in the service description. Referring to the 3943 general description model of Figure 14, tests conducted by or under a request from the service owner 3944 (see ownership in section 3.2.4) would be captured under Annotations from Owners. Testing done by others, such as consumers with unanticipated uses, could be associated through Annotations from 3rd 3945 3946 Parties. The annotations should clearly indicate what was tested, how the testing was done, who did the 3947 testing, and the testing results. The clear description of each of these artifacts and of standardized testing 3948 protocols for various levels of sophistication and completeness of testing would enable a common 3949 understanding and comparison of test coverage. It will also make it more straightforward to conduct and 3950 report on future testing, facilitating the maintenance of the service description.

Consumer testing and the reporting of results raises additional issues. While stating who did the testing is mandatory, there may be formal requirements for authentication of the tester to ensure traceability of the testing claims. In some circumstances, persons or organizations would not be allowed to state testing claims unless the tester was an approved entity. In other cases, ensuring the tester had a valid email may be sufficient. In either case, it would be at the discretion of the potential consumer to decide what level of authentication was acceptable and which testers are considered authoritative in the context of their anticipated use.

Finally, in a world of openly shared information, we would see an ever-expanding set of testing information as new uses and new consumers interact with a service. In reality, these new uses may

3960 represent proprietary processes or classified use that should only be available to authorized parties.

Testing information, as with other elements of description, may require special access controls to ensure
 appropriate access and use.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 111 of 123

### 3963 5.4.4 Testing SOA Services

3964 Testing of SOA services should be consistent with the SOA paradigm. In particular, testing resources and 3965 artifacts should be visible in support of service interaction between providers and consumers, where here 3966 the interaction is between the testing resource and the tester. In addition, the idea of opacity of the 3967 implementation should limit the details that need to be available for effective use of the test resources. 3968 Testing that requires knowledge of the internal structure of the service or its underlying capability should 3969 be performed as part of unit testing in the development sandbox, and should represent a minimum level 3970 of confidence before the service begins its transition to further testing and eventual operation in the SOA 3971 ecosystem.

### 3972 5.4.4.1 Progression of SOA Testing

Software testing is a gradual exercise going from micro inspection to testing macro effects. The first step in testing is likely the traditional code reviews. SOA considerations would account for the distributed nature of SOA, including issues of distributed security and best practices to ensure secure resources. It would also set the groundwork for opacity of implementation, hiding programming details and simplifying the use of the service.

Code review is likely followed by unit testing in a development sandbox isolated from the operational environment. The unit testing is done with full knowledge of the service internal structure and knowledge of resources representing underlying capabilities. It tests the interface to ensure exchanged messages are as specified in the service description and the messages can be parsed and interpreted as intended. Unit testing also verifies intended functionality and that the software has dealt correctly with internal

3983 dependencies, such as structure of a file system or access to other dedicated resources.

3984 Some aspects of unit testing require external dependencies be satisfied, and this is often done using 3985 mock objects to substitute for the external resources. In particular, it will likely be necessary to include 3986 mocks of existing operational services, both those provided as part of the SOA infrastructure and services

3987 from other providers.

### 3988 Service Mock

3989A service mock is an entity that mimics some aspect of the performance of an operational service3990without committing to the real world effects that the operational service would produce.

3991 Mocks are discussed in detail in sections 5.4.4.3 and 5.4.4.4.

3992 After unit testing has demonstrated an adequate level of confidence in the service, the testing must 3993 transition from the tightly controlled environment of the development sandbox to an environment that 3994 more clearly resembles the operational SOA ecosystem or, at a minimum, the intended enterprise. While 3995 sandbox testing will use simple mocks of some aspects of the SOA environment, such as an interface to 3996 a security service without the security service functionality, the dynamic nature of SOA makes a full 3997 simulation infeasible to create or maintain. This is especially true when a new composite service makes use of operational services provided by others. Thus, at some point before testing is complete, the 3998 service will need to demonstrate its functionality by using resources and dealing with conditions that only 3999 4000 exist in the full ecosystem or the intended enterprise. Some of these resources may still provide test 4001 interfaces -- more on this below -- but the interfaces will be accessible using the SOA environment and not just implemented for the sandbox. 4002

4003 At this stage, the opacity of the service becomes important as the details of interacting with the service now rely on correct use of the service interface and not knowledge of the service internals. The workings 4004 4005 of the service will only be observable through the real world effects realized through service interactions 4006 and external indications that conditions of use, such as user authentication, are satisfied. Monitoring the 4007 behavior of the service will depend on service interfaces that expose internal monitoring or provide 4008 required information to the SOA infrastructure monitoring function. The monitoring required to test a new 4009 service is likely to have significant overlap with the monitoring the SOA infrastructure includes to monitor 4010 its own health and to identify and isolate behavior outside of acceptable bounds. This is exactly what is 4011 needed as part of service testing, and it is reasonable to assume that the ecosystem transition includes use of operational monitoring rather than solely dedicated monitoring for each service being tested. 4012

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 112 of 123 4013 Use of SOA monitoring resources during the explicit testing phase sets the stage for monitoring and a 4014 level of continual testing throughout the service lifetime.

### 4015 5.4.4.2 Testing Traditional Dependencies vs. Service Interactions

4016 A SOA service is not required to make use of other operational services beyond what may be required for 4017 monitoring by the ecosystem infrastructure. The service can implement hardcoded dependencies which 4018 have been tested in the development sandbox through the use of dedicated mocks. While coordination 4019 may be required with real data sources during integration testing, the dependencies can be constrained to 4020 things that can be tested in a more traditional manner. Policies can also be set to restrict access to pre-4021 approved users, and thus the question of unanticipated users and unanticipated uses can be eliminated. 4022 Operational readiness can be defined in terms of what can be proven in isolated testing. While all this 4023 may provide more confidence in the service for its designed purpose, such a service will not fully 4024 participate in the benefits or challenges of the ecosystem. This is akin to filling a swimming pool with sea 4025 water and having someone in the pool say they are swimming in the ocean. 4026 In considering the testing needed for a fully participating service, consider the example of a new

4027 composite service that combines the real world effects and complies with the conditions of use of five 4028 existing operational services. The developer of the composite service does not own any of the component 4029 services and has limited, if any, ability to get the distributed owners to do any customization. The 4030 developer also is limited by the principle of opacity to information comprising the service description, and does not know internal details of the component services. The developer of the composite service must 4031 4032 use the component services as they exist as part of the SOA environment, including what is provided to support testing by new users. This introduces requirements for what is needed in the way of service 4033 4034 mocks.

### 4035 5.4.4.3 Use of Service Mocks

4036 Service mocks enable the tested service to respond to specific features of an operational service that is being used as a component. It allows service testing to proceed without needing access to or with only 4037 4038 limited engagement with the component service. Mocks can also mimic difficult to create situations for 4039 which it is desired to test the new service response. For composite services using multiple component 4040 services, mocks may be used in combination to function for any number of the components. Note, when using service mocks, it is important to remember that it is not the component service that is being tested 4041 (although anomalous behavior may be uncovered during testing) but the use of the component in the new 4042 4043 composite.

4044 Individual service mocks can emphasize different features of the component service they represent but 4045 any given mock does not have to mimic all features. For example, a mock of the service interface can 4046 echo a sent message and demonstrate the message is reaching its intended destination. A mock could 4047 go further and parse the sent message to demonstrate the message not only reached its destination but 4048 was understood. As a final step, the mock could report back what actions would have been taken by the 4049 component service and what real world effects would result. If the response mimicked the operational 4050 response, functional testing could proceed as if the real world effect actually occurred.

There are numerous ways to provide mock functionality. The service mock could be a simulation of the operational service and return simulated results in a realistic response message or event notification. It is also possible for the operational service to act as its own mock and simply not execute the commit stage of its functionality. The service mock could use a combination of simulation and service action without commit to generate a report of what would have occurred during the defined interaction with the operational service.

As the service proceeds through testing, mocks should be systematically replaced by the component
 resources accessed through their operational interfaces. Before beta testing begins, end-to-end testing,
 i.e. proceeding from the beginning of the service interaction to the resulting real world results, should be
 accomplished using component resources via their operational interfaces.

### 4061 5.4.4.4 Providers of Service Mocks

In traditional testing, it is often the test professionals who design and develop the mocks, but in the
 distributed world of SOA, this may not be efficient or desirable.

4064 In the development sandbox, it is likely the new service developer or test professionals working with the developer will create mocks adequate for unit testing. Given that most of this testing is to verify the new service is performing as designed, it is not necessary to have high fidelity models of other resources being accessed. In addition, given opacity of SOA implementation, the developer of the new service may not have sufficient detailed knowledge of a component service to build a detailed mock of the component service functionality. Sharing existing mocks at this stage may be possible but the mocks would need to be implemented in the sandbox, and for simple models it is likely easier to build the mock from scratch.

4071 As testing begins its transition to the wider SOA environment, mocks may be available as services. For 4072 existing resources, it is possible that an Open Source model could evolve where service mocks of 4073 available functions can be catalogued and used during initial interaction of the tested service and the 4074 operational environment. Widely used functions may have numerous service mocks, some mimicking 4075 detailed conditions within the SOA infrastructure. However, the Open Source model is less likely to be 4076 sufficient for specialty services that are not widely used by a large consumer community.

4077 The service developer is probably best qualified for also developing more detailed service mocks or for 4078 mock modes of operational services. This implies that in addition to their operational interfaces, services 4079 will routinely provide test interfaces to enable service mocks to be used as services. As noted above, a 4080 new service developer wanting to build a mock of component services is limited to the description provided by the component service developer or owner. The description typically will detail real world 4081 4082 effects and conditions of use but will not provide implementation details, some of which may be 4083 proprietary. Just as important in the SOA ecosystem, if it becomes standard protocol for developers to 4084 create service mocks of their own services, a new service developer is only responsible for building his 4085 own mocks and can expect other mocks to be available from other developers. This reduces duplication 4086 of effort where multiple developers would be trying to build the same mocks from the same insufficient information. Finally, a service developer is probably best qualified to know when and how a service mock 4087 4088 should be updated to reflect modified functionality or message exchange.

It is also possible that testing organizations will evolve to provide high-fidelity test harnesses for new
 services. The harnesses would allow new services to plug into a test environment and would facilitate
 accessing mocks of component services. However, it will remain a constant challenge for such
 organizations to capture evolving uses and characteristics of service interactions in the real SOA
 environment and maintain the fidelity and accuracy of the test systems.

### 4094 **5.4.4.5 Fundamental Questions for SOA Testing**

- 4095 In order for the transition to the SOA operational environment to proceed, it is necessary to answer two 4096 fundamental questions:
  - Who provides what testing resources for the SOA operational environment, e.g. mocks of interfaces, mocks of functionality, monitoring tools?
- What testing needs to be accomplished before operational environment resources can be accessed for further testing?
- The discussion in section 5.4.4.4 notes various levels of sophistication of service mocks and different communities are likely to be responsible for different levels. Section 5.4.4.4 advocates a significant role for service developers, but there needs to be community consensus that such mocks are needed and that service developers will agree to fulfill this role. There is also a need for consensus as to what tools should be available as services from the SOA infrastructure.
- As for use of the service mocks and SOA environment monitoring services, practical experience is needed upon which guidelines can be established for when a new service has been adequately tested to proceed with a greater level of exposure with the SOA environment. Malfunctioning services could cause serious problems if they cannot be identified and isolated. On the other hand, without adequate testing under SOA operational conditions, it is unlikely that problems can be uncovered and corrected before

, , , ,

Standards Track Work Product

soa-raf-v1 0-wd07

they reach an operational stage.

4097

4098

4111

Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.

11 May 2012 Page 114 of 123 As noted in section 5.4.4.2, some of these questions can be avoided by restricting services to more traditional use scenarios. However, such restriction will limit the effectiveness of SOA use and the result

4114 will resemble the constraints of traditional integration activities we are trying to move beyond.

## 4115 5.4.5 Architectural Implications for SOA Testing

4124

4125

4116 The discussion of SOA Testing indicates numerous architectural implications on the SOA ecosystem:

- 4117 The distributed, boundary-less nature of the SOA ecosystem makes it infeasible to create and 4118 maintain a single mock of the entire ecosystem to support testing activities.
- A standard suite of monitoring services needs to be defined, developed, and maintained. This
   should be done in a manner consistent with the evolving nature of the ecosystem.
- Services should provide interfaces that support access in a test mode.
- Testing resources must be described and their descriptions must be catalogued in a manner that enables their discovery and access.
  - Guidelines for testing and ecosystem access need to be established and the ecosystem must be able to enforce those guidelines asserted as policies.
- Services should be available to support automated testing and regression testing.
- 4127 Services should be available to facilitate updating service description by anyone who has
   4128 performed testing of a service.

# 4129 6 Conformance

- 4130 This Reference Architecture Framework is an abstract architectural description of Service Oriented
- 4131 Architecture, which means that it is especially difficult to construct tests for conformance to the
- 4132 architecture. In addition, conformance to an architectural specification does not, by itself, guarantee any 4133 form of interoperability between multiple implementations.
- 4134 However, it is possible to decide whether or not a given architecture is conformant to an architectural
- 4135 description such as this one. In discussions of conformance we use the term **target architecture** to 4136 identify the (typically concrete) architecture that may be viewable as conforming to the abstract principles
- 4130 outlined in this document.

### 4138 Target Architecture

- 4139 A target architecture is an architectural description of a system that is intended to be viewed as 4140 conforming to the SOA-RAF.
- 4141 While we cannot guarantee interoperability between target architectures (or more specifically between
- 4142 applications and systems residing within the ecosystems of those target architectures), interoperability
- 4143 between target architectures is promoted by conformance to this Reference Architecture Framework as it 4144 reduces the semantic impedance mismatch between the different ecosystems.
- 4145 The primary measure of conformance is whether given concepts as described in document have
- 4146 corresponding concepts in the target architecture. Such a correspondence MUST honor the relationships 4147 identified within this document for the target architecture to be considered conforming.
- 4148 For example, in Section 3.2.4.1 we identify resource as a key concept. A resource is associated with an
- 4149 owner and a number of identifiers. For a target architecture to conform to the SOA-RAF, it must be
- 4150 possible to find corresponding concepts of resource, identifier and owner within the target architecture: 4151 say *entity*, *token* and *user*. Furthermore, the relationships between *entity*, *token* and *user* MUST mirror 4152 the relationships between *entity*, *token* and *user* MUST mirror
- the relationships between resource, identifier and owner appropriately.
- 4153 Clearly, such correspondence is simpler if the terminology within the target architecture is identical to that 4154 in the SOA-RAF. But so long as the 'graph' of concepts and relationships is consistent, that is all that is
- 4155 required for the target architecture to conform to this Reference Architecture Framework.
- 4156 [EDITOR'S NOTE: The conformance section is not complete]

# 4157 A. Acknowledgements

- 4158 The following individuals have participated in the work of the technical committee responsible for creation
- 4159 of this specification and are gratefully acknowledged:

### 4160 Participants:

- 4161 Chris Bashioum, MITRE Corporation
- 4162 Rex Brooks, Individual Member
- 4163 Peter F Brown, Individual Member
- 4164 Scott Came, Search Group Inc.
- 4165 Joseph Chiusano, Booz Allen Hamilton
- 4166 Robert Ellinger, Northrop Grumman Corporation
- 4167 David Ellis, Sandia National Laboratories 4168 Jeff A. Estefan, Jet Propulsion Laboratory
- 4169 Don Flinn, Individual Member
- 4170 Anil John, Johns Hopkins University
- 4170 Ann Johns Hopkins Oniversit 4171 Ken Laskey, MITRE Corporation
- 4172 Boris Lublinsky, Nokia Corporation
- 4173 Francis G. McCabe, Individual Member
- 4174 Christopher McDaniels, USSTRATCOM
- 4175 Tom Merkle, Lockheed Martin Corporation
- 4176 Jyoti Namjoshi, Patni Computer Systems Ltd.
- 4177 Duane Nickull, Adobe Inc.
- 4178 James Odell, Associate
- 4179 Michael Poulin, Fidelity Investments
- 4180 Michael Stiefel, Associate
- 4181 Danny Thornton, Northrop Grumman
- 4182 Timothy Vibbert, Lockheed Martin Corporation
- 4183 Robert Vitello, New York Dept. of Labor
- 4184 The committee would particularly like to underline the significant writing and conceptualization
- 4185 contributions made by Chris Bashioum, Rex Brooks, Peter Brown, Dave Ellis, Jeff Estefan, Ken Laskey,
- 4186 Boris Lublinsky, Frank McCabe, Michael Poulin and Danny Thornton

### Comment [PFB117]: Issue 162

# 4187 B. Index of Defined Terms

4188	Action	. 37
	Action Level Real World Effect	. 49
	Actor	. 25
	Authority	. 26
	Business Collaboration	. 69
	Business functionality	. 29
	Business Process	. 69
	Business solution	. 36
	Capability	. 29
	Choreography	. 72
	Communication	. 34
	Composability	. 36
	Constitution	. 24
	Consumer	. 27
	Contract	. 34
	Delegate	. 25
	Endpoint	. 63
	Governance	. 80
	Governance Framework	. 81
	Governance Processes	. 81
	Identifier	. 30
	Joint Action	. 38
	Leadership	. 81
	Logical Framework	. 75
	Manageability	. 96
	Manageability property	. 96
	Mediator	. 27
	Message Exchange	. 67
	Need	. 29
	Non-Participant	. 25
	Obligation	. 27
	Operations	. 67
	Orchestration	. 70
	Owner	. 27
	Ownership	. 31
	Ownership Boundary	. 31
	Participant	. 25
	Permission	. 27
4400		

Policy33
Policy Conflict
Policy Conflict Resolution77
Policy Constraint76
Policy Decision76
Policy Enforcement76
Policy Framework75
Policy Object76
Policy Ontology75
Policy Owner76
Policy Subject76
Presence64
Private State
Protocol64
Provider27
Real World Effect29
Regulation82
Requirement29
Resource
Responsibility26
Right26
Risk
Rule
Security
Semantic Engagement35
Service Contract100
Service Level Real World Effect49
Service Mock111
Shared State
SOA Ecosystem21
SOA-based System21
Social Structure
Stakeholder24
State
Target Architecture115
Trust
Willingness

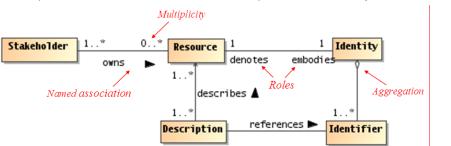
4189

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 118 of 123

# 4190 **C. The Unified Modeling Language, UML**

4191 Figure 48 illustrates an annotated example of a UML class diagram that is used to represent a visual

4192 model depiction of the Resources Model in the *Participation in a SOA Ecosystem* view.



Comment [PFB118]: Revise and update (using only used classes) once all figures are harmonized using same toolset Issue 163

### 4193

4194 Figure 48 - Example UML class diagram—Resources

Lines connecting boxes (classifiers) represent associations between things. An association has two roles (one in each direction). A role can have cardinality, for example, one or more ("1..\*") stakeholders own zero or more ("0..\*) resources. The role from classifier A to B is labeled closest to B, and vice versa, for

zero or more ("0..\*) resources. The role from classifier A to B is labeled closest to B, and vice versa, for
 example, the role between resource to Identity can be read as resource embodies Identity, and Identity
 denotes a resource.

Mostly, we use named associations, which are denoted with a verb or verb phrase associated with an arrowhead. A named association reads from classifier A to B, for example, one or more stakeholders owns zero or more resources. Named associations are a very effective way to model relationships between concepts.

4204 An open diamond (at the end of an association line) denotes an aggregation, which is a part-of 4205 relationship, for example, Identifiers are part of Identity (or conversely, Identity is made up of Identifiers).

4206 A stronger form of aggregation is known as composition, which involves using a filled-in diamond at the

4207 end of an association line (not shown in above diagram). For example, if the association between Identity

4208 and Identifier were a composition rather than an aggregation as shown, deleting Identity would also 4209 delete any owned Identifiers. There is also an element of exclusive ownership in a composition

relationship between classifiers, but this usually refers to specific instances of the owned classes

4211 (objects).

4212 This is by no means a complete description of the semantics of all diagram elements that comprise a

4213 UML class diagram, but rather is intended to serve as an illustrative example for the reader. It should be

4214 noted that the SOA-RAF utilizes additional class diagram elements as well as other UML diagram types

such as sequence diagrams and component diagrams. The reader who is unfamiliar with the UML is

4216 encouraged to review one or more of the many useful online resources and book publications available

4217 describing UML (see, for example, www.uml.org).

### **D. Critical Factors Analysis** 4218

A critical factors analysis (CFA) is an analysis of the key properties of a project. A CFA is analyzed in 4219

4220 terms of the goals of the project, the critical factors that will lead to its success and the measurable 4221

requirements of the project implementation that support the goals of the project. CFA is particularly 4222 suitable for capturing quality attributes of a project, often referred to as "non-functional" or "other-than-

functional" requirements: for example, security, scalability, wide-spread adoption, and so on. As such, 4223

4224 CFA complements rather than attempts to replace other requirements capture techniques.

#### **D.1 Goals** 4225

4226 A goal is an overall target that you are trying to reach with the project. Typically, goals are hard to 4227 measure by themselves. Goals are often directed at the potential consumer of the product rather than the 4228 technology developer.

### **D.2 Critical Success Factors** 4229

A critical success factor (CSF) is a property, sub-goal that directly supports a goal and there is strong 4230 belief that without it the goal is unattainable. CSFs themselves are not necessarily measurable in 4231 themselves.

4232

#### **D.3 Requirements** 4233

4234 A requirement is a specific measurable property that directly supports a CSF. The key here is

4235 measurability: it should be possible to unambiguously determine if a requirement has been met. While 4236 goals are typically directed at consumers of the specification, requirements are focused on technical

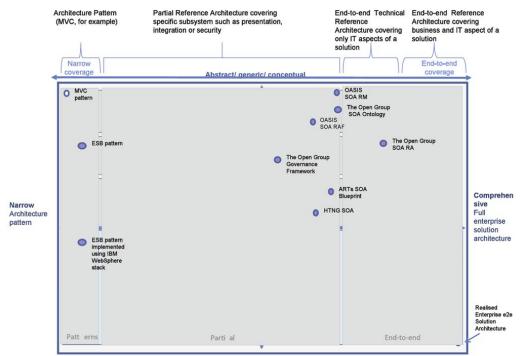
4237 aspects of the specification.

4238	E. Relationship to other SOA Open Standards				
4239 4240 4241 4242	Numerous efforts have been working in the space of defining standards for SOA and its applications. The OASIS SOA-RM Technical Committee and its SOA-RA Technical Subcommittee has established communications with several of these efforts in an attempt to coordinate and facilitate among the efforts. This appendix notes some of these efforts.				
4243	E.1 Navigating the SOA Open Standards Landscape Around Architecture				
4244 4245 4246 4247	The white paper "Navigating the SOA Open Standards Landscape Around Architecture" issued jointly by OASIS, OMG, and The Open Group <b>[SOA-NAV]</b> was written to help the SOA community at large navigate the myriad of overlapping technical products produced by these organizations with specific emphasis on the "A" in SOA, i.e., Architecture.				
4248 4249 4250 4251 4252	The white paper explains and positions standards for SOA reference models, ontologies, reference architectures, maturity models, modeling languages, and standards work on SOA governance. It outlines where the works are similar, highlights the strengths of each body of work, and touches on how the work can be used together in complementary ways. It is also meant as a guide to users for selecting those specifications most appropriate for their needs.				
4253 4254 4255 4256 4257	While the understanding of SOA and SOA Governance concepts provided by these works is similar, the evolving standards are written from different perspectives. Each specification supports a similar range of opportunity, but has provided different depths of detail for the perspectives on which they focus. Although the definitions and expressions may differ, there is agreement on the fundamental concepts of SOA and SOA Governance.				
4258	The following is a summary taken from [SOA-NAV] of the positioning and guidance on the specifications:				
4259 4260 4261 4262 4263 4264 4265	<ul> <li>The OASIS Reference Model for SOA (SOA RM) is the most abstract of the specifications positioned. It is used for understanding core SOA concepts</li> <li>The Open Group SOA Ontology extends, refines, and formalizes some of the core concepts of the SOA RM. It is used for understanding core SOA concepts and facilitates a model-driven approach to SOA development.</li> <li>The OASIS Reference Architecture Foundation for SOA (this document) is an abstract, foundational reference architecture addressing a broader ecosystem viewpoint for building and</li> </ul>				
4203 4266 4267 4268 4269 4270 4271 4272 4273 4274	<ul> <li>interacting within the SOA paradigm. It is used for understanding different elements of SOA, the completeness of SOA architectures and implementations, and considerations for reaching across ownership boundaries where there is no single authoritative entity for SOA and SOA governance.</li> <li>The Open Group SOA Reference Architecture is a layered architecture from consumer and provider perspective with cross cutting concerns describing these architectural building blocks and principles that support the realizations of SOA. It is used for understanding the different elements of SOA, deployment of SOA in enterprise, basis for an industry or organizational reference architecture, implication of architectural decisions, and positioning of vendor products in a SOA context.</li> </ul>				
4274 4275 4276 4277 4278 4279 4280 4281	<ul> <li>The Open Group SOA Governance Framework is a governance domain reference model and method. It is for understanding SOA governance in organizations. The OASIS Reference Architecture for SOA Foundation contains an abstract discussion of governance principles as applied to SOA across boundaries</li> <li>The Open Group SOA Integration Maturity Model (OSIMM) is a means to assess an organization's maturity within a broad SOA spectrum and define a roadmap for incremental adoption. It is used for understanding the level of SOA maturity in an organization</li> </ul>				
4282 4283 4284	<ul> <li>The Object Management Group SoaML Specification supports services modeling UML extensions. It can be seen as an instantiation of a subset of the Open Group RA used for representing SOA artifacts in UML.</li> </ul>				
4285 4286 4287	Fortunately, there is a great deal of agreement on the foundational core concepts across the many independent specifications and standards for SOA. This could be best explained by broad and common experience of users of SOA and its maturity in the marketplace. It also provides assurance that investing				

 soa-raf-v1.0-wd07
 Working Draft 07
 11 May 2012

 Standards Track Work Product
 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved.
 Page 121 of 123

in SOA-based business and IT transformation initiatives that incorporate and use these specifications and
 standards helps to mitigate risks that might compromise a successful SOA solution.



4290

Concrete/ Specific/ physical

4291Figure 49 - SOA Reference Architecture Positioning (from "Navigating the SOA Open Standards Landscape Around4292Architecture, © OASIS, OMG, The Open Group)

4293 E.2 The Service-Aware Interoperability Framework: Canonical

4294 Readers of the RAF are strongly encouraged to review a document recently published by the Health 4295 Level Seven (HL7) Architecture Board (ArB) entitled "The Service-Aware Interoperability Framework: 4296 Canonical." The document was developed over the past four years, and represents a substantive, 4297 industry-specific (i.e. the large but vertical healthcare industry) effort to surface, define, and discuss in 4298 detail various aspects of a number of critical success factors involved in implementing large-scale (i.e. 4299 enterprises-level) architectures with a focus on achieving both intra- and inter-enterprise technical 4300 interoperability irrespective of the particular exchange mechanism involved, e.g. service interface, 4301 messages, or structure documents. 4302 In addition to providing an independent validation for the both the general focus as well as some of the 4303 concrete specifics of the RAF (especially those involving the importance of governance in achieving large-scale interoperability), the HL7 document underscores several important aspects of the RAF 4304 4305 includina: 4306 A validation of one of the RAF's primary claims, i.e. the need to specifically focus on intra- and inter-1. 4307 enterprise interoperability as a first-class citizen in any enterprise (or cross-enterprise) architecture 4308 discussion irrespective of the particular choice of enterprise architecture approach, framework, or 4309 implementation technology, e.g. TOGAF, Zachman, ODP, SOA, etc. In addition, the HL7 document 4310 clearly articulates - as the RAF does as well - the difficulties involved in achieving that focus in such 4311 a manner that it can be manifest in operationally effective and manageable processes and 4312 deliverables.

soa-raf-v1.0-wd07 Standards Track Work Product Working Draft 07 Copyright © OASIS Open 2011. All Rights Reserved. 11 May 2012 Page 122 of 123 Comment [PFB120]: Issue 298

4313	2. An agreement as to the critical importance of governance as the root of any successful effort to		
4314	implement large-scale, cross-boundary interoperability aimed at achieving a collective shared		
4315	purpose-mission or goal. In particular, both documents share the notion that "technical-level"		
4316 4317	<u>governance – e.g. service – or message-level technical interchange specifications – must itself be a</u> manifestation of a higher-level, cross-jurisdictional agreement on desired goals, responsibilities,		
	accountabilities, and deliverables.		
4318			
4319	3. A validation of the importance of core SOA constructs as constructs useful in expressing many of the		
4320	central aspects of interoperability irrespective of whether a particular interoperability scenario is		
4321	actually "realized" using SOA-compatible technologies. (NOTE: Although it might at first appear that		
4322	the OASIS document is more "service-focused" than the "service-aware" document from HL7, there		
4323	are considerably more similarities than differences in these slightly different foci secondary to the fact		
4324	that both documents are intent on describing principles and framework concepts rather than delving		
4325	into technical details. There are, however, certain instances where content of the OASIS document		
4326	would be likely to find its analogue in SAIF Implementation Guides rather than in the SAIF Canonical		
4327	Definition document.)		
4328	4. The need for specific, explicit statements of those aspects of a given component that affects its ability		
4329	to participate in a reliable, predictable manner in a variety of interoperability scenarios. In particular,		
4330	component characteristics must be explicitly expressed in both design-time and run-time contexts as		
4331	implicit assumptions are the root of most failures to achieve successfully cross-boundary		
4332	interoperability irrespective of the chosen technical details of a particular interoperability instance.		
4333	In summary, although the two documents are clearly not identical in their specifics, e.g. there are		
4334	differences in the language used to name various concepts, constructs, and relationships; there are some		
4335	differences in levels of abstraction regarding certain topics, etc; and although the OASIS RAF is more		
4336	directly focused on services as a final implementation architecture than the HL7 SAIF CD, the		
4337	commonalities of purpose, content, and approach present in the two documents – documents which were		
4338	developed by each organization without any knowledge of the others' work in what clearly are areas of		
4339	common interest and concern – far outweighs their differences. As such, the HL7 ArB and the OASIS		
4340	RAF Task Force have agreed to work together going forward to obtain the highest degree of alignment		
4341	and harmonization possible between the two documents including the possible development of a joint		
4342	document under the auspices of one of the ISO software engineering threads.		
4343			
4344	The current version of the HL7 document – as well as all future versions – is available at:		
4345	http://www.hl7.org/permalink/?SAIFCDR1PUBLIC		
10.10		/	Comment [PFB121]: Issue 298 -
4346	E.3 IEEE Reference Architecture		to be completed
4347	TBD		
			Comment (DED422), Jacus 200
4348	E.4 RM-ODP		Comment [PFB122]: Issue 298 – to be completed
			to be completed
4349	TBD		